

**The chronicle of Richard of Devizes concerning the deeds of Richard the First, King of England. Also Richard of Cirencester's description of Britain / Translated and edited by J.A. Giles.**

### **Contributors**

Richard, of Devizes, approximately 1150-approximately 1200  
Richard, of Cirencester, -1401?. Description of Britain.  
Giles, J. A. (John Allen), 1808-1884

### **Publication/Creation**

London : James Bohn, 1841.

### **Persistent URL**

<https://wellcomecollection.org/works/hp5h82xq>

### **License and attribution**

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.



Wellcome Collection  
183 Euston Road  
London NW1 2BE UK  
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722  
E [library@wellcomecollection.org](mailto:library@wellcomecollection.org)  
<https://wellcomecollection.org>





43861 / B

4/6

28



*Saml. Reynolds. Solly*

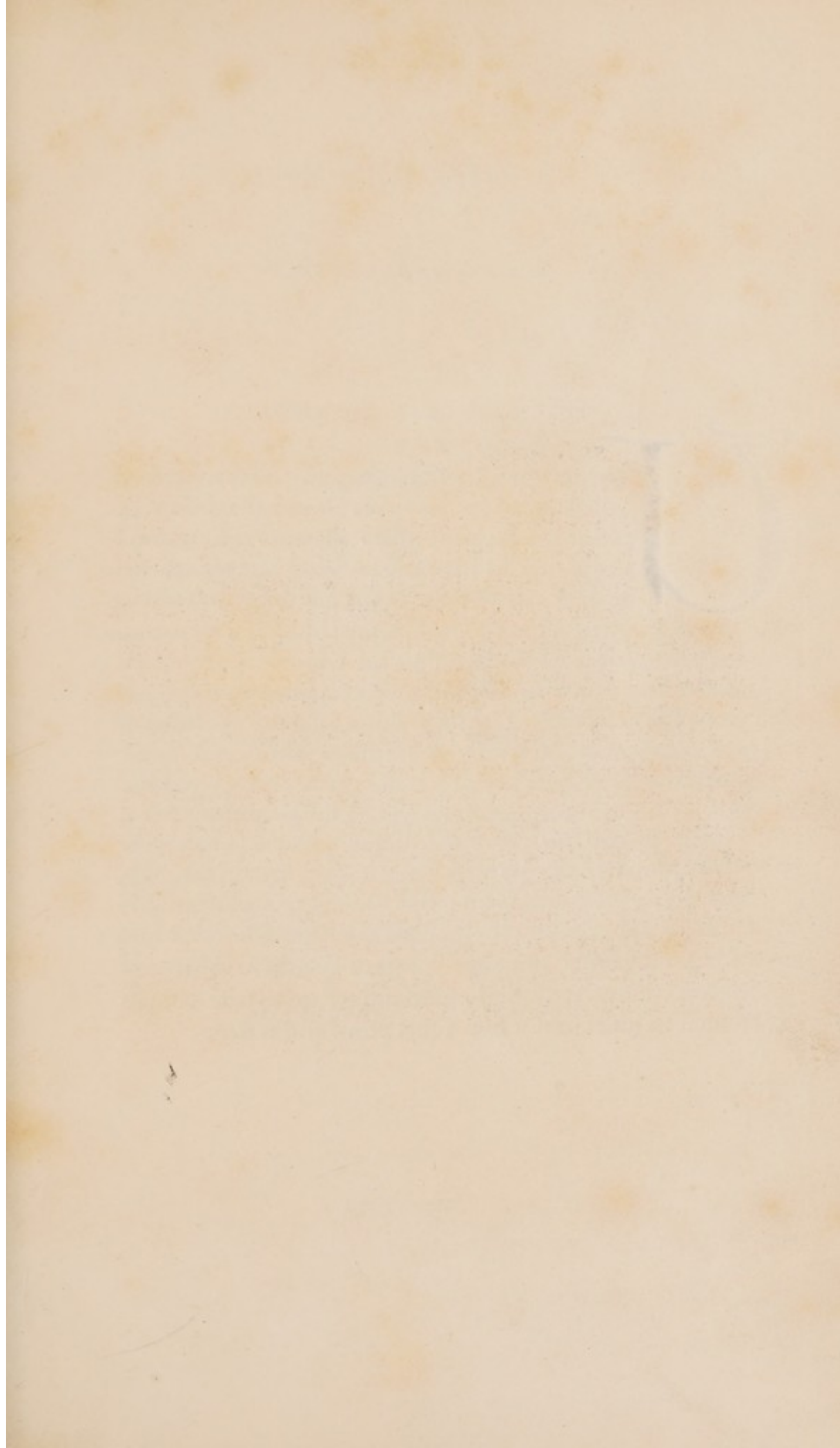
RICARDUS, Divisensis

RICHARD, of Divizes

GRP 8/53











THE CHRONICLE  
OF  
**RICHARD OF DEVIZES**

CONCERNING THE DEEDS OF  
RICHARD THE FIRST,  
KING OF ENGLAND.

ALSO

RICHARD OF CIRENCESTER'S  
DESCRIPTION OF BRITAIN.

---

TRANSLATED AND EDITED

**BY J. A. GILES, LL.D.**

LATE FELLOW OF C. C. COLL. OXFORD.

---

LONDON:  
**JAMES BOHN, 12, KING WILLIAM STREET, STRAND.**

MDCCCXLI.

THE CHRONICLE

RICHARD OF DEVIZES

TOOKENING THE DEEDS OF

RICHARD THE FIRST

BY RICHARD OF DEVIZES

RICHARD OF CIRENCESTER

DESCRIPTION OF BRITAIN

LONDON :

WILLIAM STEVENS, PRINTER, BELL YARD,

TEMPLE BAR.



TO THE RIGHT REVEREND  
EDWARD,  
LORD BISHOP OF LLANDAFF,  
THIS TRANSLATION OF  
RICHARD OF DEVIZES,  
IS RESPECTFULLY INSCRIBED,  
BY HIS LORDSHIP'S  
OBEDIENT AND HUMBLE SERVANT,  
J. A. GILES.



TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE

LORD ALMONTE

FOR THE LORD OF THE TREASURY

THE SECRETARY OF THE

REVENUE OF THE

IN THE PARLIAMENT OF GREAT BRITAIN

BY THE LORDS OF THE

OF THE HOUSE OF COMMONS

AND OF THE

OF THE HOUSE OF LORDS

IN THE PARLIAMENT OF GREAT BRITAIN

BY THE LORDS OF THE

OF THE HOUSE OF COMMONS

AND OF THE

OF THE HOUSE OF LORDS

IN THE PARLIAMENT OF GREAT BRITAIN

BY THE LORDS OF THE

OF THE HOUSE OF COMMONS

AND OF THE

OF THE HOUSE OF LORDS

## PREFACE.

---

THIS volume contains a valuable Chronicle of King Richard's expedition to the Holy Land, by Richard of Devizes, translated for the first time from the original Latin, recently published by the English Historical Society, and a reprint of the former translation of Richard of Cirencester. Of the former of these chroniclers nothing more is known than the information which he has himself given in his preface. It is, therefore, useless on the present occasion to indulge in conjecture, or to amplify what is so scanty. Of the latter a notice reprinted from the former London edition (8vo. 1809) will be found in page 81. It has been a question whether the work is a genuine production of Richard of Cirencester, who has

written other works still extant. It is, therefore, repeated here on its own merits, of which the reader will be the judge. The original Latin has been added, as it is not likely to be republished in a separate form.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	Page
RICHARD OF DEVIZES . . . . .	1
RICHARD OF CIRENCESTER . . . . .	79
BOOK I. . . . .	86
BOOK II. . . . .	141
LATIN TEXT . . . . .	151
APPENDIX . . . . .	201
INDEX TO THE MAP . . . . .	223



TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	THE HISTORY OF THE
2	3
4	5
6	7
8	9
10	11
12	13
14	15
16	17
18	19
20	21
22	23
24	25
26	27
28	29
30	31
32	33
34	35
36	37
38	39
40	41
42	43
44	45
46	47
48	49
50	51
52	53
54	55
56	57
58	59
60	61
62	63
64	65
66	67
68	69
70	71
72	73
74	75
76	77
78	79
80	81
82	83
84	85
86	87
88	89
90	91
92	93
94	95
96	97
98	99
100	101
102	103
104	105
106	107
108	109
110	111
112	113
114	115
116	117
118	119
120	121
122	123
124	125
126	127
128	129
130	131
132	133
134	135
136	137
138	139
140	141
142	143
144	145
146	147
148	149
150	151
152	153
154	155
156	157
158	159
160	161
162	163
164	165
166	167
168	169
170	171
172	173
174	175
176	177
178	179
180	181
182	183
184	185
186	187
188	189
190	191
192	193
194	195
196	197
198	199
200	201
202	203
204	205
206	207
208	209
210	211
212	213
214	215
216	217
218	219
220	221
222	223
224	225
226	227
228	229
230	231
232	233
234	235
236	237
238	239
240	241
242	243
244	245
246	247
248	249
250	251
252	253
254	255
256	257
258	259
260	261
262	263
264	265
266	267
268	269
270	271
272	273
274	275
276	277
278	279
280	281
282	283
284	285
286	287
288	289
290	291
292	293
294	295
296	297
298	299
300	301
302	303
304	305
306	307
308	309
310	311
312	313
314	315
316	317
318	319
320	321
322	323
324	325
326	327
328	329
330	331
332	333
334	335
336	337
338	339
340	341
342	343
344	345
346	347
348	349
350	351
352	353
354	355
356	357
358	359
360	361
362	363
364	365
366	367
368	369
370	371
372	373
374	375
376	377
378	379
380	381
382	383
384	385
386	387
388	389
390	391
392	393
394	395
396	397
398	399
400	401
402	403
404	405
406	407
408	409
410	411
412	413
414	415
416	417
418	419
420	421
422	423
424	425
426	427
428	429
430	431
432	433
434	435
436	437
438	439
440	441
442	443
444	445
446	447
448	449
450	451
452	453
454	455
456	457
458	459
460	461
462	463
464	465
466	467
468	469
470	471
472	473
474	475
476	477
478	479
480	481
482	483
484	485
486	487
488	489
490	491
492	493
494	495
496	497
498	499
500	501
502	503
504	505
506	507
508	509
510	511
512	513
514	515
516	517
518	519
520	521
522	523
524	525
526	527
528	529
530	531
532	533
534	535
536	537
538	539
540	541
542	543
544	545
546	547
548	549
550	551
552	553
554	555
556	557
558	559
560	561
562	563
564	565
566	567
568	569
570	571
572	573
574	575
576	577
578	579
580	581
582	583
584	585
586	587
588	589
590	591
592	593
594	595
596	597
598	599
600	601
602	603
604	605
606	607
608	609
610	611
612	613
614	615
616	617
618	619
620	621
622	623
624	625
626	627
628	629
630	631
632	633
634	635
636	637
638	639
640	641
642	643
644	645
646	647
648	649
650	651
652	653
654	655
656	657
658	659
660	661
662	663
664	665
666	667
668	669
670	671
672	673
674	675
676	677
678	679
680	681
682	683
684	685
686	687
688	689
690	691
692	693
694	695
696	697
698	699
700	701
702	703
704	705
706	707
708	709
710	711
712	713
714	715
716	717
718	719
720	721
722	723
724	725
726	727
728	729
730	731
732	733
734	735
736	737
738	739
740	741
742	743
744	745
746	747
748	749
750	751
752	753
754	755
756	757
758	759
760	761
762	763
764	765
766	767
768	769
770	771
772	773
774	775
776	777
778	779
780	781
782	783
784	785
786	787
788	789
790	791
792	793
794	795
796	797
798	799
800	801
802	803
804	805
806	807
808	809
810	811
812	813
814	815
816	817
818	819
820	821
822	823
824	825
826	827
828	829
830	831
832	833
834	835
836	837
838	839
840	841
842	843
844	845
846	847
848	849
850	851
852	853
854	855
856	857
858	859
860	861
862	863
864	865
866	867
868	869
870	871
872	873
874	875
876	877
878	879
880	881
882	883
884	885
886	887
888	889
890	891
892	893
894	895
896	897
898	899
900	901
902	903
904	905
906	907
908	909
910	911
912	913
914	915
916	917
918	919
920	921
922	923
924	925
926	927
928	929
930	931
932	933
934	935
936	937
938	939
940	941
942	943
944	945
946	947
948	949
950	951
952	953
954	955
956	957
958	959
960	961
962	963
964	965
966	967
968	969
970	971
972	973
974	975
976	977
978	979
980	981
982	983
984	985
986	987
988	989
990	991
992	993
994	995
996	997
998	999
1000	1001

## PROLOGUE.

---

*To the Venerable Father Robert, his very good Lord, formerly Prior of the Church of Winchester, health to persevere in the good work he has begun, his faithful servant, Richard, surnamed of Devizes, sends greeting :*

§ 1. AFTER you had happily proceeded to the Charter House (*at Witham*) from our church of Winchester, much and often did I desire to follow you who had thus departed, peradventure to remain with you, but certainly to behold what you were about, how you lived, and whether the Carthusian cell is more exalted and nearer heaven than the cloister of Winchester. It pleased God at length to satisfy my wish. I came, and oh that I had come alone ! I went thither making the third, and those who went with me were the cause of my return. My desire displeased them, and they caused my fervor, I will not say error, to grow cold. I saw with you that which elsewhere I had not seen, which I could not have believed, and which I could not sufficiently admire. In each of your cells there is one door according to custom, which you are permitted to open at pleasure, but to go out by it is not permitted, except so much as that one foot should always remain in the

cell, within the threshold. The brethren may step out with one foot, whichever they please, but the other must remain in the cell. A great and solemn oath is to be taken that the door by which it is not permitted to enter or depart should be kept open. I am astonished also at another thing; abounding in all the good things of this world, as having nothing, yet possessing all things, more compassionate and humane than all men, having the most perfect love one to another, you divide the affection of charity to strangers, you bless without giving supplies to your guests. Nor do I less admire in the third place, that living to yourselves apart out of society, and singly, you understand all the great things achieved in the World as they happen, and even sometimes you know them prior to their being accomplished. Do not, however, consider it want of respect in me to your more than Pythagorean taciturnity, if I shall dare presume to address men of so great gravity, and so arduous profession, rather with the trifles of the world than mere idle gossip.

§ 2. Nevertheless, although, as it is thought, the Omniscient God is with you and in you, and through Him you know all things, and not from man, nor yet by man, you were pleased, as you said, that my essay would be a solace to you, inasmuch as in the first place I should write to you a history of the fresh changes, which the world has produced, turning squares into circles, (more especially since your transmigration to the celled heaven, by means of which the world may appear more worthless to you, having its fickleness before your eyes,) and, secondly, that a well-known hand might recal to you the memory of one beloved.



Oh ! what delight ! if that holy spirit, if the angel of the Lord, if the deified man who is become already of the number of the gods, should deign to remember me before the great God, me, who am scarcely worthy to be accounted a man. I have done that which you desired, do that which you have promised. And that the little book may have a commencement of some importance, I have begun a little higher than was stipulated, making our Royal house, troubled like that of *Œdipus*, the bounds of my work, commencing at the latter part, not daring to hope to unravel the whole. Why, and how, and when, the father may have crowned his son ; how great things and of what importance thence ensued ; who and how often and what regions they embroiled ; with what success they all ended I have left to those who produce greater works : my narrative serves only for the living.





## RICHARD OF DEVIZES.

---

IN THE YEAR OF THE LORD MCLXXXIX.

§ 3. Now in the year of our Lord's incarnation 1189, Richard, the son of King Henry the Second by Eleanor, brother of Henry the Third, was consecrated king of the English by Baldwin, archbishop of Canterbury, at Westminster, on the third of the nones of September (3 Sept.). On the very day of the coronation, about that solemn hour, in which the Son was immolated to the Father, a sacrifice of the Jews to their father the devil was commenced in the city of London, and so long was the duration of this famous mystery, that the holocaust could scarcely be accomplished the ensuing day. The other cities and towns of the kingdom emulated the faith of the Londoners, and with a like devotion despatched their blood-suckers with blood to hell. In this commotion there was prepared, although unequally, some evil against the wicked, everywhere throughout the realm, only Winchester alone, the people being prudent and circumspect, and the city always acting mildly, spared its vermin. It never did anything overspeedily; fearing nothing more than to repent, it considers the result of every thing before the commencement. It was unwilling, unprepared, to cast up violently through the parts the indigestion by which it was oppressed to its bodily peril, and it was careful for its bowels, in the mean time temperately concealing its

A. D. 1189,  
Richard's  
coronation.

Henry, son of  
King Henry  
II., is fre-  
quently  
styled Henry  
the Third, in  
the early  
Chronicles.

Jews, so call-  
ed probably  
from their  
usurious  
practices.



uneasiness, until it should be possible for it, at a convenient time for cure, to cast out the whole cause of the disease at once and once for all.

§ 4. Not without the anxious solicitude and amazement of many a bat was seen, in the middle and bright part of the day, to flutter through the monastery, inconveniently recircling in the same tracks, and especially around the king's throne.

§ 5. William de Longchamp, who had been the chancellor of the Earl of Poitiers before his accession, when the earl was crowned king, considered his office to have profited as much for the better, as a kingdom is superior to an earldom.

§ 6. A circumstance happened on the self-same day of the coronation in Westminster Abbey, a presage of such portentous omen, as then was hardly allowable to be related even in a whisper. At Complin, the last hour of the day, the first peal that day happened to be rung, neither by any agreement, nor even the ministers of the church themselves being aware of it, till after it was done; for Prime, Tierce, Sext, Nones, and the solemn service of Vespers and two Masses were celebrated without any ringing of peals.

Fines levied  
on Stephen  
de Marzai,  
otherwise  
called Stephen  
de  
Turonis,

and Ralph  
de Glanville.

Stephen de Marzai, seneschal of Anjou, under the king lately deceased, he great and mighty, singularly fierce, and the master of his lord, being taken and cast in chains, was dragged to Winchester, where being made a gazing-stock to angels and to men, emaciated with woeful hunger, and broken with the weight of his irons, he was constrained to the payment of thirty thousand pounds of money of Anjou, and the promise of fifteen thousand pounds, for his ransom. Ralph de Glanville, Justiciary of the realm of England and the king's eye, a man not inferior to Stephen, except in manners and riches, being deprived of authority and given into custody, redeemed merely his liberty to go and come for fifteen thousand pounds of silver. And whereas this

name Glanville had been so great the day before, a name as it were above every name, so that whosoever, to whom it should be given by the Lord, would converse among princes, and would be adored by the people, yet the next morning there remained not one in the land who could be called by this name. That was the ruin of those two, to wit, of Stephen and Ralph, which also it is certain has been the ruin of thousands before them, and which hereafter may ruin others, namely, a suspicion arising from the confidence of their former lord.

§ 8. John the king's brother, who alone of the sons of his mother Queen Eleanor survived his brother, besides the earldom of Mortain, which by his father's gift he had long enjoyed, was so greatly enriched and increased in England by his brother, that both privately and publicly it was affirmed by many that the king had no thoughts of returning to the kingdom, and that his brother, already no less powerful than himself, if he should not restrain his innate temper, would, impelled by the desire of sovereignty, endeavour to drive him vanquished from the realm.

John's  
power.

§ 9. The time of commencing his journey pressed hard upon King Richard, as he, who had been first of all the princes on this side the Alps in the taking up of the cross, was unwilling to be last in setting out. A king worthy of the name of king, who, in the first year of his reign, left the kingdom of England for Christ, scarcely otherwise than if he had departed never to return. So great was the devotion of the man, so hastily, so quickly and so speedily did he run, yea fly, to avenge the wrongs of Christ. However, whilst he kept the greater matter in his mind, giving himself in some little measure to deliberation for the kingdom, having received power from the Pope that he might withdraw the cross from such of his own subjects, as he should desire, for the government of his kingdom, he first appointed Hugh Pudsey, bishop of Durham, to be Chief

Richard  
raises funds  
for the cru-  
sade.



Justice of the whole realm, and with design, as is thought by many, further creating him a young Earl of Northumberland out of an old bishop, the custody of as many castles as he liked being yielded to him, he diligently cleared from his coffers ten thousand pounds of silver. Geoffrey Fitz Peter, William Briwere, and Hugh Bardulf being permitted to remain at home, the cross being withdrawn from them, the king's treasurer transferred the whole collections of the three as three nuts into the Exchequer. All the sheriffs of the kingdom on any trivial accusation falling under the king's displeasure, were deprived of their unlucky power, and scarcely permitted to see his face, even by the mediation of inestimable treasure. Ralph de Glanville, than whom none of his time was more subtle whilst he was in power, now being reduced to a private person by his prince, was so stupified through grief, that his son-in-law Ralph de Ardenne utterly lost, by reason of his careless talk, whatever he had previously acquired by the judgment of his mouth. He too himself, because he was an old man, and not able to bear fatigue, if he had been willing to give the king that little which remained after the payment of the fine, as a gratuity, would easily have obtained a remission of the peril of the journey. The king received security from the tributary kings of the Welsh and of the Scots, that they would not pass their borders for the annoyance of England during his absence.

Consecrates  
bishops.

§ 10. Godfrey, son of that renowned Richard de Luci, Richard (Fitz Neale) the Treasurer, Hubert Walter, and William de Longchamp, four men of no small virtue, and of no mean praise, were elected at Pippewelle to the four vacant sees, viz. Winchester, London, Salisbury, and Ely. They all obtained sufficient canonical nomination, and especially the elect of Winchester, who obtained his nomination to the dignity on the seventeenth of the kalends of October (Sept. 15),



while the election of the other three was delayed till the morrow, the king consenting and the archbishop confirming what was done, although at the first he would rather have had it somewhat otherwise: concerning which it wonderfully happened that he who had been nominated to one of the sees by the archbishop's means, died that very day. William, bishop elect of Ely, retained the king's seal on the payment of three thousand pounds of silver, although Reginald the Italian had bid one thousand more. The bishops elect of Winchester and Salisbury were consecrated at Westminster, by Baldwin, archbishop of Canterbury, on the eleventh of the kalends of November (Oct. 22). On that day, Hugh de Nonante, bishop of Coventry, laid his complaint before the archbishop and bishops assembled at the consecration of the bishops elect, against his monks of Coventry, for having laid violent hands on him and drawn his blood before the altar. He had also expelled the greater part of the congregation before his complaint, nor did he cease from his importunity, until he had obtained the sanction of all the bishops in attestation to the Pope against the monks.

§ 11. Godfrey, bishop of Winchester, mindful of his profession, suing for the restoration of the possessions of his church, which had been taken away, as no one had any right of replevin against the church of Winchester with respect to its two manors, namely Meones and Weregrave, recovered them by judicial decree, three thousand pounds of silver being privately given to the king. Nor did the considerate man omit at the same time to pay a fine to the king for the indemnity of the church's treasure, for his patrimony, for the county of Hampshire and for the custody of the castles of Winchester and Porchester. And because the time for the payment of so much money was nigh at hand, as he could not pass over the day fixed for the payment without detriment to the whole business, and he could find

Richard  
raises money.



no nearer resource under heaven, although against his will, he laid his hand on the treasure of his church, to restore which, however, he obliged himself and his successors, providing security to the convent by the testimony of a sealed bond. A man of such courtesy and moderation, who not even when angry ever did any thing to those who were under him, but what savoured of mildness : truly of His family, and one of His familiars, of Whom it is said, under Whom to live is to reign.

§ 12. The king readily disburthened all, whose money was a burden to them, such powers and possessions as they chose being given to anybody at pleasure ; where-with also on a time an old acquaintance in the company joking him, he broke off with this evasion, "I would sell London if I could find a chapman." Many a one might have been forewarned by that expression, had it been uttered sooner, not to learn to be a wise merchant, after the English proverb, "by buying for a dozen, and selling for one and a half."

#### IN THE YEAR OF THE LORD MCXC.

12th Decem-  
ber, 1189.  
A. D. 1190.

§ 13. In the year from the incarnation of the Lord 1190, the king crossed the channel to Neustria (Normandy), the care of the whole kingdom being committed to the chancellor.

Richard, bishop elect of London, and William of Ely, were consecrated by Archbishop Baldwin at Westminster, the second of the kalends of January (Dec. 31, 1189). William de Mandeville, earl of Albemarle, being seized with delirium in an acute semitertian fever, died at Gisorz : whose relict, a woman almost a man, who was deficient in nothing masculine but manhood, William de Fortibus, a knight a thousand times approved in arms, received to wife by King Richard's gift, together with all the honours of her former husband.

Proceedings  
of the chan-  
cellor.

§ 14. William, bishop of Ely, and the king's chancellor, by nature a second Jacob, although he did not

wrestle with the angel, a goodly person, making up in mind for his shortness in stature, secure of his master's love, and presuming on his favour, because all power was, is, and will be impatient of a partner, expelled Hugh de Pusac from the Exchequer, and barely leaving him even his sword with which he had been invested as an earl by the king's hand, after a short time, deprived him of the honour of his earldom also. And lest the bishop of Durham alone should bewail his misfortunes, the villain, who was now more cruel than a wild beast, and spared nobody, fell upon the bishop of Winchester also. The custody of the castles and county is taken away from him, nor is he even permitted to enjoy his own patrimony. The kingdom is disturbed, and the discontented are charged with disaffection to the king. Everybody crosses the sea to importune the king against the tyrant, but he having crossed first of all, briefly related before the king a partial account of his entire proceeding and expulsion; by whom also he was fully instructed in all things to be done; he thus foiled the adverse wishes of his rivals, and was on his return before those who assailed him could obtain admission to the king's presence. So he returns to the English not less powerful and prosperous, than one who has accomplished all things whatsoever he desired. The king having returned from Gascony where he had forcibly put down the thieves, and captured the holds they had occupied, all those whom the chancellor had injured assembled before him, who satisfying every one as then to each seemed good, sent them all back to the chancellor with such letters as they then desired. John, bishop of Norwich, being also one of those who threatened Saladin, amply furnished for his journey and the cause, whilst proceeding on his way in the borders of Burgundy, fell among robbers, who took from him all his substance; and, as he had no means left wherewith he might proceed, he turned his course towards the Pope, and when with his insinuation



he had bemoaned his mischance and poverty to him, the clemency of the holy see dismissed him home, absolved from his vow.

The chancellor seizes the bishop of Durham.

§ 15. The bishop of Winchester, being affected with a serious disease, remained some time beyond the sea. The bishop of Durham in haste proceeded direct to London, but not being received by the barons of the Exchequer, he hastily, as if sure to triumph, pursues his way after the chancellor, who at that time had gone on an expedition towards Lincoln: whom having overtaken, he saluted in the king's name, not freely nor without a frown, and then questioned him seriously concerning the affairs of state, and, indeed, as if he would not suffer anything to be done without his consent. He neglected fine language and long words, and while he boasted too much of power not yet received, not considering with whom he was speaking, he loosely uttered whatever he ought to have kept secret. At the conclusion of his address, the staff is put forth to silence talk, the king's solemn act much to be revered is exhibited for recital. The mountains travail, the silly mouse is produced. The observance of strict silence is enjoined during the king's mandate; all were hushed, and attentive held their tongues. The epistle is read in public, which would have been much more to be feared if it had not been so soon read; he (Longchamp) well able to conceal his device, shrewdly deferred to answer what he had heard till the seventh day, appointing their place of conference at Tickhill. On the day appointed the bishop of Durham comes to the castle, and his attendants being commanded to wait for him before the gates, he goes in to the chancellor quite alone; he who before had held his peace, speaks first, and compels the deceived to recite with his own mouth letters he had obtained after the former against whatever he had hoped. As he was preparing to answer, he added, "The other day while you were speaking it was time



for me to be silent, now that you may discern why I have taken a time for speaking, you being silent ; as my lord the king lives, you shall not depart hence until you have given me hostages for all the castles which you hold being delivered up to me, for I do not take you as a bishop a bishop, but as a chancellor a chancellor !” The ensnared had neither the firmness nor the opportunity to resist ; the hostages are given, and at the term assigned the castles are given up for the restoring of the hostages. William, bishop of Worcester, who succeeded next to Baldwin, went the way of all flesh.

§ 16. The lord bishop of Winchester, at length recovering in Neustria, and also desiring to receive back the things taken from him, recrossed with all the speed he could, and found the chancellor besieging the castle of Gloucester. Whose arrival being known, the chancellor goes forth to meet him as he comes, and having heartily embraced and kissed him, says, “ You have come at a most desirable time, dear friend ! are we to prosecute the siege or desist ?” To whom the bishop replies, “ If you desire peace, lay down arms.” He, quick of apprehension, perceived the force of the words, and commanded the heralds to sound the retreat ; he also restored to the bishop his patrimony without dispute, but that only. All the others, who had crossed the sea against the chancellor, profited less than nothing. William, legate of the apostolic see, held a council at Westminster, in which, lest there should be nothing done to be reported of him hereafter, he sentenced all religion to be expelled from Coventry cathedral, and prebendary clerks to be substituted in place of the monks.

§ 17. William, the wonderful bishop of Ely, chancellor of the king, Justiciary of the kingdom, of threefold charge and threefold title, that he might use both hands as the right, and that the sword of Peter might succour the sword of the ruler, took upon himself the office of legate of all England, Scotland, Wales, and

Besieges  
Gloucester  
castle.

Appointed  
papal le-  
gate.



Ireland, which he obtained from the Pope at the instance of the king, who would not otherwise set out, by Reginald, bishop of Bath. Therefore successful in every office which he craved, he passed to and fro through the kingdom with the rapidity of a flash of lightning.

The King of Darkness, that old Incendiary, having added fresh fuel, fanned the ancient spark between the church of Salisbury and the monastery of Malmesbury into renewed flames. The abbot is roused not now to make the profession of pontiff, but to disavow the very title of the bishop as well as his crosier. Royal letters to the chancellor were obtained, by which the abbot should be compelled to respond at law to the motions of the bishop. Nor did the man whose affairs were at stake forget himself, no peril could ever overtake him unprovided, who never knew the loss of anything through sloth. He repelled one nail by another, being presented by the king with letters invalidating the former letters. The chancellor having perceived the shameful contrariety of the mandates of his prince, lest the king's fame should be injured by the fact, if he proceeded in the cause, deferred all process of both the one party and the other till the king's return.

§ 18. King Richard exacted an oath from his two brothers, John his own brother and Geoffrey a bastard, that they would not enter England within three years from his departure, the three years to be reckoned from the day of his starting from Tours ; through the entreaties of his mother, however, dispensing so far concerning John, that passing into England with the chancellor's approbation, he should abide his judgment, and at his pleasure he should either remain in the kingdom, or live in exile.

Queen Eleanor's dowry was recognized throughout the king's territories by a solemn act, and delivered up to her, so that she who had before lived on the Exchequer might thenceforward live on her own.



The king's fleet, having left its own shores, sailed round Spain, and from the ocean having entered the Mediterranean, which further on is called the Grecian Sea, by the Straits of Africa, is steered on to Marseilles, i. e. of Gibraltar. there to await the king.

The king of France and the king of England, having held a council at Tours and again at Vezelay, and confirmed the treaty between themselves and their kingdoms, and having settled and disposed of all things on both sides according to their pleasure, depart from each other with their respective armies. The Frenchman, being subject to sickness at sea, marches by land to Sicily; the Englishman, on the contrary, about to proceed by sea, comes to Marseilles to his ships. Baldwin, archbishop of Canterurby, and Hubert Walter, bishop of Salisbury, being the only bishops of all England who accomplished their vows, follow the king to Sicily, and arrive first in the land of Juda.

§ 19. The monks of the order of Cluni were not wont to supplant one another in their priories and government either by entreaty or bribes, and although some of them have sometimes attempted something of that sort, that however we have seen visited with condign punishment. There was a certain venerable man elected prior of Montacute solely on account of his worth, Josceline by name, in whom you could discern nothing but what was praiseworthy. To supplant this so good a man there came a certain one, whose name it is not necessary to mention, one of his false brethren, with letters, obtained by great cunning from the abbot of Cluni, by which it was commanded that the prior should resign to the bearer of the present letters and the congregation receive him for their prelate. The prior by some means foreknew what commodity the dealer had come to seek, wherefore, without awaiting the mandate, he vacated his seat in the chapter, and, the congregation being present, addressed him, "Friend, for what



art thou come?" He, having tarried long that he might appear unwillingly to receive that, which he had come to take by violence, at length betook himself to his seat, and anon imprecated himself, saying, "O thou who with unalterable purpose governest the world, whose power takes its pastime in human affairs, who puttest down the mighty and exaltest the humble! O thou just Judge Jesu Christ, if wrongfully I here preside, without delay and manifestly do thou vouchsafe to show!" Behold the miracle! On that same day he lost his speech; on the next his life; on the third, being consigned to the earth, he learnt by experience, and taught by example, that sordid plunder is never followed by prosperous results.

A certain monk of Glastonbury, in hopes of promotion, courted Earl John with many presents, but just as he should have come to receive it, a certain beam having suddenly given way, fell in his face, so that bruised and wholly disfigured, he lost both his eggs (*qy.* expectations) and his money together.

Description  
of Richard's  
fleet.

§ 20. The ships which the king found already prepared on the shore were one hundred in number, and fourteen busses, vessels of great magnitude and admirable swiftness, strong vessels and very sound, whereof this was the equipage and appointment. The first of the ships had three spare rudders, thirteen anchors, thirty oars, two sails, three sets of ropes of all kinds, and besides these double whatever a ship can want, except the mast and the ship's boat. There is appointed to the ship's command a most experienced steersman, and fourteen subordinate attendants picked for the service are assigned him. The ship is freighted with forty horses of value, trained to arms, and with arms of all kinds for as many horsemen, and forty foot, and fifteen sailors, and with an entire year's provisions for as many men and horses. There was one appointment for all the ships, but each of the busses received a double appoint-



ment and freight. The king's treasure, which was very great and inestimable, was divided amongst the ships and busses, that if one part should experience danger, the rest might be saved. All things being thus arranged, the king himself, with a small household, and the chief men of his army, with his attendants, having quitted the shore, advanced before the fleet in galleys, and being daily entertained by the maritime towns, taking along with them the larger ships and busses of that sea, arrived prosperously at Messina. So great was the splendour of the approaching armament, such the clashing and brilliancy of their arms, so noble the sound of the trumpets and clarions, that the city quaked and was greatly astounded, and there came to meet the king a multitude of all ages, people without number, wondering and proclaiming with what exceeding glory and magnificence that king had arrived, surpassing the king of France, who with his forces had arrived seven days before. And forasmuch as the king of France had been already received into the palace of Tancred, king of Sicily, within the walls, the king of England pitched his camp without the city. The same day the king of France, knowing of the arrival of his comrade and brother, flies to his reception, nor could their gestures sufficiently express in embraces and kisses how much each of them rejoiced in the other. The armies cheered one another with mutual applause and intercourse, as if so many thousand men had been all of one heart and one mind. In such pastimes is the holiday spent until the evening, and the weary kings departing, although not satiated, return every one to his own quarters. On the next day the king of England presently caused gibbets to be erected without the camp to hang thereon thieves and robbers. The judges delegated spared neither sex nor age; the cause of the stranger and the native found the like law and the like punishment. The king of France, whatever transgression his people committed, or whatever

He arrives at  
Messina,  
Sept. 23.

His proceed-  
ings there.



offence was committed against them, took no notice and held his peace; the king of England esteeming the country of those implicated in guilt as a matter of no consequence, considered every man his own, and left no transgression unpunished, wherefore the one was called a Lamb by the Griffones, the other obtained the name of a Lion.

He is insulted by Tancred,

§ 21. The king of England sent his messengers to the king of Sicily, demanding Johanna his sister, formerly queen of Sicily, and her dowry, with a golden seat and the whole legacy which King William had bequeathed to his father, King Henry, namely, a golden table of twelve feet in length, a silk tent, a hundred of the best galleys with all their necessities for two years, sixty thousand silinas of wheat, sixty thousand of barley, sixty thousand of wine, four and twenty golden cups, and four and twenty golden dishes. The king of Sicily, setting little by the demands of the king of the English, and still less considering his own exigencies, sent him back his sister with the ordinary furniture of her bed, having given her, however, with royal consideration, a thousand thousand Terrini for her expenses. On the third day following, the king of England, having passed over the great river Del Far, which separates Calabria from Sicily, entered Calabria in arms, and took therein the well fortified town which is called La Banniere, and having expelled the Griffones, established his sister there, and secured the place with an armed garrison. Again the king took a very strong castle, which is called the Griffones' Monastery, on the same river Del Far, situated between La Banniere and Messina, and fortified it when taken; and having without mercy despatched by various tortures the Griffones who had resisted, caused them to be exhibited as a gazing-stock to their friends. Wido king of Jerusalem, sent word to Philip king of the French, and Richard king of the English, whilst wintering in Sicily, that the residue of the Christians who lay



before Acre, would, on account of their weakness and the violence of the pagans, either be obliged to depart or perish, unless very shortly sustained. To aid whom, the kings sent forward Henry count of Champagne, and Baldwin archbishop of Canterbury, and Hubert bishop of Salisbury, and Ralph de Glanville, with a strong army; of whom Archbishop Baldwin and Ralph de Glanville died at the siege of the city, which the Latins call Acre and the Jews Accaron, while the kings still remained in Sicily.

§ 22. The Griffones, before King Richard's arrival in Sicily, were more powerful than all the mighty of that region, and having moreover always hated the people beyond the Alps, and now irritated by recent occurrences more inveterate than ever, kept the peace with all who claimed the king of France for their master, but sought to wreak the entire vengeance of their wrongs on the king of the English and his tailed followers, for the Greeks and Sicilians followed that king about and called them tailed English. Thereupon all intercourse with the country is denied the English by proclamation; they are murdered both day and night by forties and fifties wherever they are found unarmed. The slaughter was daily multiplied, and it was madly purposed to go on until they should either destroy or put them all to flight. The king of England, excited by these disorders, raged like the fiercest lion, and vented his anger in a manner worthy that noble breast. His fury astounded his nearest friends, and his whole court the famous princes of his army sat around his throne, each according to his rank, and if any one might dare to raise his eyes to look him in the face, it would be very easy to read in the ruler's countenance what he silently considered in his mind. After a long and deep silence, the king disburdened his indignant lips as follows.

and the  
Greek inha-  
bitants of  
Sicily.

The origin  
of this joke  
is unknown.

§ 23. "O my soldiers! my kingdom's strength and crown! who have endured with me a thousand perils,

His speech.



you, who by might have subdued before me so many tyrants and cities, do you now see how a cowardly rabble insults us? Shall we vanquish Turks and Arabs? shall we be a terror to nations the most invincible? shall our right hand make us a way even to the ends of the world for the cross of Christ? shall we restore the kingdom to Israel, when we have turned our backs before vile and effeminate Griffones? Shall we, subdued here in the confines of our own country, proceed further, that the sloth of the English may become a by-word to the ends of the earth? Am I not right then, O my friends, in regarding this as a new cause of sorrow? Truly, methinks I see you deliberately spare your pains, that perchance you may the better contend with Saladin hereafter. I, your lord and king, love you; I am solicitous for your honour; I tell you, I warn you again and again, if now you depart thus unrevenged, the mention of this base flight will both precede and accompany you. Old women and children will be raised up against you, and assurance will yield a double energy to every enemy against the runaways. I know that he who saves any one by constraint, does the same as kill him; the king will retain no man against his will. I am unwilling to compel any one of you to stay with me, lest the fear of one should shake another's confidence in the battle. Let every one follow what he may have chosen, but I will either die here or will revenge these wrongs common to me and you. If hence I depart alive, Saladin will see me only a conqueror; will you depart, and leave me your king alone to meet the conflict?"

Its effect.

§ 24. The king had scarcely well concluded his harangue, when all his brave and valiant men burst out, troubled only that their lord appeared to mistrust his men. They promise that they will comply from their souls with whatever he shall enjoin; they are ready to penetrate mountains and walls of brass, should he but give a nod: all Sicily, at his command alone, shall be



subjected to him by their labour ; if he should but desire it, as far as the Pillars of Hercules shall be steeped in blood. As the clamour, hushed by the ruler's gravity, subsided, " I am pleased," said he, " with what I hear ; you refresh my spirits by your readiness to cast off your disgrace. And, as delay has always been hurtful to those who are prepared, we must make haste, so that whatever we design may be sudden. Messina shall be taken by me in the first place, the Griffones shall either ransom themselves, or be sold. If King Tancred do not more speedily satisfy me for my sister's dowry and the legacy of King William, which falls to me in right of my father, after the depopulation of his kingdom, he shall be compelled to restore them fourfold. Whatever belongs to the inhabitants shall be a prey for every body to whom it shall fall ; only with my lord the king of the French, who lodges in the city, and with all his followers, shall perfect peace be preserved. Let two thousand bold knights, the choice of the entire army, and a thousand foot, archers, be made ready within two days. Let the law be enforced without remission ; let the footman, who flies full speed, lose his foot, the knight be deprived of his girdle. Let every man, according to military discipline, be disposed in line in exact array, and on the third day, at the sound of the horn, let them follow me. I will head them and show them the way to the city !" The assembly separated with the greatest applause ; the king, having relaxed the sternness of his countenance, was seen returning thanks for their good-will with his wonted affability of expression.

His plans  
against Mes-  
sina.

Literally,  
men who  
have not their  
hearts in their  
boots.

§ 25. It wonderfully fell out that not even the king's enemy could pretend that his cause was unjust. On the third day on which the army was to have been led forth to battle, very early in the morning, Richard archbishop of Messina, the archbishop of Montreal, the archbishop of Pisa, Margaritus Admiralis, Jordan de Pin, and many other of King Tancred's familiar friends, having taken

Delayed by  
an embassy.

Oct. 4.



with them Philip king of the French, the bishop of Carnot, the duke of Burgundy, the counts of Nevers and Perch, and many followers of the king of France, also, the archbishops of Rouen and Auch, the bishops of Evreux and Bayonne, and all who were supposed to have any influence with the English, came reverently to the king of England, that they might cause satisfaction for all his complaints to be given to his content. The king, after long and earnest solicitation, is prevailed on by the entreaty of such honourable men, and commits the matter to be settled by their arbitration. They would consider well the enormity of what he had had to brook, and would provide that the satisfaction should be answerable to the offence. Whatever their general deliberation should have determined to be sufficient, would be satisfactory to him, if only, from that very moment, none of the Griffones would lay hands on his men. Those who had come, were even more astonished than rejoiced at this unhopèd-for clemency, and giving him at once what he had last propounded, they retired from the king's presence, and were assembled at some distance to treat of the rest.

Messina besieged by Richard;

§ 26. The king's army having on the previous day been numbered according to the aforementioned order, was with solemn silence in arms before the camp, awaiting the herald, from the rising of the sun, and the framers of the peace, not so easily coming to a determination, had protracted the day till full the third hour, when behold, suddenly and unexpectedly, there was proclaimed by a voice, too distinctly heard, before the gates, "To arms, to arms, men! Hugo Brunus is taken and being murdered by the Griffones, all he has is being plundered, and his men are being slaughtered." The cry of the breach of peace confounded those who were treating for the peace, and the king of France broke forth in the following speech: "I take it that God has hated these men, and hardened their hearts that they



may fall into the hands of the destroyer :” and having quickly returned, with all who were with him, to the king’s pavilion, he found him already girding on his sword, whom he thus briefly addressed : “ I will be a witness before all men, whatever be the consequence, that thou art blameless, if at length thou takest arms against the cursed Griffones.” When he had said this, he departed ; those who had accompanied him followed, and were received into the city. The king of England proceeds in arms ; the terrible standard of the dragon is borne in front unfurled, while behind the king the sound of the trumpet excites the army. The sun shone brightly on the golden shields, and the mountains were resplendent in their glare ; they marched cautiously and orderly, and the affair was managed without show. The Griffones, on the contrary, the city gates being closed, stood armed at the battlements of the walls and towers, as yet fearing nothing, and incessantly discharged their darts upon the enemy. The king, acquainted with nothing better than to take cities by storm and batter forts, let their quivers be emptied first, and then at length made his first assault by his archers who preceded the army. The sky is hidden by the shower of arrows, a thousand darts pierce through the shields spread abroad on the ramparts, nothing could save the rebels against the force of the darts. The walls are left without guard, because no one could look out of doors, but he would have an arrow in his eye before he could shut it.

§ 27. In the mean time, the king with his troops, without repulse, freely and as though with permission, approached the gates of the city, which with the application of the battering ram he forced in an instant, and having led in his army took every hold in the city, even to Tancred’s palace and the lodgings of the French around their king’s quarters, which he spared in respect of the king his lord. The standards of the victors are planted

and captured.



on the towers through the whole circuit of the city, and each of the surrendered fortifications he entrusted to particular captains of his army, and caused his nobles to take up their quarters in the city. He took the sons of all the nobility both of the city and surrounding country as hostages, that they should either be redeemed at the king's price or the remainder of the city should be delivered up to him without conflict, and he should take to himself satisfaction for his demands from their King Tancred. He began to attack the city about the fifth hour of the day, and took it the tenth hour; and having withdrawn his army, returned victorious to his camp. King Tancred terrified at the words of those who announced to him the issue of the transaction, hastened to make an agreement with him, sending him twenty thousand ounces of gold for his sister's dowry, and other twenty thousand ounces of gold for the legacy of King William and the observance of perpetual peace towards him and his. This small sum is accepted with much ado and scornfully enough, the hostages are given back, and peace is sworn and confirmed by the nobles of both nations.

§ 28. The king of England, now having little confidence in the natives, built a new wooden fort of great strength and height by the walls of Messina, which, to the reproach of the Griffones, he called "Mategriffun." The king's valour was greatly extolled, and the land kept silence in his presence. Walter, who from a monk and prior of St. Swithin's church at Winchester, had been advanced to be abbot of Westminster, died on the fifth of the calends of October.

Sept. 27.

Queen Eleanor arrives in Sicily.

§ 29. Queen Eleanor, a matchless woman, beautiful and chaste, powerful and modest, meek and eloquent, which is rarely wont to be met with in a woman, who was advanced in years enough to have had two husbands and two sons crowned kings, still indefatigable for every undertaking, whose power was the admiration of her age,

Eleanor, Queen of Lewis and Henry, mother of Henry and Richard.



having taken with her the daughter of the king of the Navarrese, a maid more accomplished than beautiful, followed the king her son, and having overtaken him still abiding in Sicily, she came to Pisa, a city full of every good, and convenient for her reception, there to await the king's pleasure, together with the king of Navarre's ambassadors and the damsel. Many knew, what I wish that none of us had known. This same queen, in the time of her former husband, went to Jerusalem. Let none speak more thereof; I also know well. Be silent.

## IN THE YEAR OF THE LORD MCXCI.

§ 30. The first conference between the earl of Mor- A. D. 1191.  
tain, the king's brother, and the chancellor, respecting the custody of certain castles and the money out of the exchequer conceded to the earl by his brother, was held at Winchester on Lætare Hierusalem.

4 March.

Robert, prior of St. Swithin's at Winchester, having left his priory and forsaken his profession, cast himself into the sect of the Carthusians at Witham, for grief, (or shall I say for devotion?)

Walter, prior of Bath, with a like fervour or distraction, had before presumed the self-same thing, but once withdrawn, he seemed as yet to think of nothing less than a return.

§ 31. The king, although he had long ago sworn to the king of France that he would accept his sister as a consort, whom his father King Henry had provided for him, and for a long time had taken care of, because he was suspicious of the custody had of her, contemplated marrying the princess his mother had engaged. And that he might accomplish the desire without difficulty, with which he vehemently burned, he consulted the count of Flanders, a most eloquent man, and one who possessed an invaluable power of speech, by whose mediation the king of France released the king of England from his oath to marry his sister, and quit-

Richard's  
marriage  
with Phillip's  
sister broken  
off.



claimed to him for ever the whole territory of Vægesin and Gisorz, having received from him ten thousand pounds of silver.

Philip and  
Richard leave  
Sicily.

March 30.

§ 32. The king of France, with his army, departing for Jerusalem before the king of England, put to sea the third of the calends of April. The king of England, about to leave Sicily, caused the fort which he had built to be taken down, and stowed the whole of the materials in his ships to take along with him. Every sort of engine for the attack of fortifications, and every kind of arms which the heart of man could invent, he had all ready in his ships. Robert, son of William Fitz Ralph, was consecrated for the bishopric of Worcester by William de Longchamp, as yet legate, at Canterbury, on the third of the nones of May. The convent of Canterbury deposed their prior, whom Archbishop Baldwin had set over them, and substituted another in the place of the deposed.

May 5.

The arch-  
bishop of  
Rouen re-  
turns into  
England,

§ 33. Walter, archbishop of Rouen, because, as is usual with the clergy, he was pusillanimous and timorous, having bidden adieu to Jerusalem from afar, resigned unasked all indignation against Saladin, and gave to the king all the provision he had brought for attacking him, and the cross; whilst, forgetting shame, he pretended, with that devotion which diffidence, the most wretched of mothers, brought forth, that pastors of the church should rather preach than fight, and that it is not meet for a bishop to wield other arms than those of virtue. But the king, to whom his money appeared more necessary than his personal presence, as if convinced by the overpowering argument, approved the allegations, and having arranged concerning the three years' contribution that he should furnish of a certain number of men and horses, sent him back again into England with his letters to William the Chancellor; this being added at the end of the letters for honour and for all, that the chancellor should use his



counsel in affairs of state. The king, having gained experience from the proceedings of this archbishop, purified his army, not permitting any one to come with him, but such as could bear arms, and with a ready mind would use them; nor did he suffer those who returned to take back with them their money, which they had brought thus far, or their arms. The queen also, his mother, who had been received with all honour, as it was meet, and after affectionate embraces had been led forth with great splendour, he caused to return with the archbishop; having retained for himself the princess whom he had sought, and entrusted her to the safe custody of his sister, who had now returned to the camp to meet her mother.

§ 34. John, bishop of Exeter, closed his last day.

Savaricus, archdeacon of Northampton, being also one of the many who had followed the king of England out of England to Sicily, was supplied by the king with letters patent, in the presence of the king's mother, to the justiciaries of England, containing the king's assent, and something more than an assent, that he should be promoted to whatever vacant diocese he could be elected to. These honourable acquisitions Savaricus sent to his kinsman the bishop of Bath, into England, but he himself retired to Rome as one who had been best known among the Romans.

§ 35. Richard king of England, in letters destined for England, taking leave of his whole kingdom, and giving strict injunction for the chancellor to be honoured by all, his fleet more to be prized for its quality than its numbers being in readiness, with a chosen and brave army, with his sister Johanna and the princess he was to marry, with all things which could be necessary for those going to war or going to set out on a long journey, set sail on the fourth of the ides of April. In the fleet, <sup>with letters of recommendation from Richard.</sup> <sup>10 April.</sup> moreover, there were one hundred and fifty-six ships, four and twenty busses, and thirty and nine galleys; the sum of the vessels two hundred and nineteen.



His beha-  
viour.

§ 36. The archbishop of Rouen came to England to the chancellor, by whom he was received and treated honourably, and much better than the king had commanded. Others also followed with many mandates, in all of which the conclusion was, that the chancellor should be obeyed by all. To his brother John especially, he sent word by every messenger, that he should adhere to the chancellor, that he should be a support to him against all men, and that he should not violate the oath he had given him. The king of England sent orders to the chancellor, and to the convent of Canterbury, and to the bishops of the province, that they should canonically and jointly provide for the metropolitan see, because, Baldwin being dead, it had been bereft of its prelate; for the abbacy, however, of Westminster, now vacant, it is permitted to the chancellor alone to ordain as he pleases. There happened an eclipse of the sun about the third hour of the day: those who were ignorant of the causes of things were astonished, that in the middle of the day, no clouds obstructing the sun, the sun's rays should give a much feebler light than usual; but those whom the motion of the universe occupies, say that the making deficiencies of the sun and moon does not signify anything.

Promotes the  
disagreement  
between the  
chancellor  
and Earl  
John.

§ 37. John, the king's brother, who had long kept his ears open for it, when he knew for certain that his brother had turned his back on England, presently perambulated the kingdom in a more popular manner, nor did he forbid his followers calling him the king's heir. And as the earth is dreary in the sun's absence, so was the face of the kingdom altered at the king's departure. The nobles are all stirred up in arms, the castles are closed, the cities are fortified, entrenchments are thrown up. The archbishop of Rouen, not foreseeing more of the future than the fuel of error which was praised, knew well how so to give contentment to the chancellor, that at the same time he might not displease



his rivals. Writs are privately despatched to the heads of the clergy and of the people, and the minds of every body are excited against the chancellor. The knights of parliament willingly, though secretly, consented, but the clergy, more fearful by nature, dared not swear obedience to either master. The chancellor, perceiving these things, dissembled, disdaining to know that any one would presume any how to attempt anything against him.

§ 38. At length the pot is uncovered; it is announced to him, that Gerrard de Camville, a factious man and reckless of allegiance, had done homage to Earl John, the king's brother, for the castle of Lincoln, the custody whereof is known to belong to the inheritance of Nicholaa, the wife of the same Gerrard, but under the king. The deed is considered to infringe upon the crown, and he resolves to go and revenge its commission. So having quickly collected a numerous army, he came into those parts, and having first made an attack against Wigmore, he compelled Roger de Mortimer, impeached for a conspiracy made against the king, with the Welch, to surrender the castles, and abjure England for three years. As he departed, he was blamed by his associates for want of courage, because, while supported by the numerous soldiery of the castles, and abounding in advantages, he had given way, without a blow, at the bare threats of the priest. Reproof was too late after the error; Roger leaves the kingdom, and the chancellor gives orders to besiege Lincoln. Gerrard was with the earl; and his wife Nicholaa, proposing to herself nothing effeminate, defended the castle like a man. The chancellor was wholly busied about Lincoln, whilst Earl John occupied the castle of Nottingham and that of Tickhill, both very strong, the warden being compelled to the surrender by fear alone. He proceeded, moreover, to send word to the chancellor that he must raise the siege, or otherwise he would avenge the cause of his vassal. That it was not proper to take

The chancellor  
besieges  
the castle of  
Lincoln.



from the loyal men of the kingdom, well known and free, their charges, and commit them to strangers and men unknown. That it was a mark of his folly that he had entrusted the king's castles to such, because they would expose them to adventurers. That if it should go with every barbarian with that facility, that even the castles should be ready at all times for their reception, that he would no longer bear in silence the destruction of his brother's kingdom and affairs.

Conduct of  
the arch-  
bishop of  
Rouen.

§ 39. The chancellor, incredibly troubled at these threats, having summoned before him the peers and chiefs of the army, begins, "Never trust me if this man seeks not to subjugate the kingdom to himself; what he presumes is exorbitant, even if he had a right to wear the crown by annual turns with his brother, for Eteocles has not yet completed a full year in his government." He uttered many words of anguish after this manner; and then again having taken heart, as he was greater in moral courage than in physical, conceiving great things in his mind, he sent the archbishop of Rouen to the earl, demanding in an imperative manner that he should deliver up the castles, and that he should answer before the court of King's Bench for the breach of his oath to his brother. The archbishop, skilful in working with either hand, praised the constancy of the chancellor; and having proceeded to the earl, after the delivery of the mandates, he whispered in his ear, that whatever others might say, he should dare something great, worthy of Gyara and the dungeon, if he desired to be anything. In public, however, he advised that the earl and the chancellor should agree to an interview, and that a reference to arbitration should end their disagreement.

An interview  
agreed upon.

§ 40. The earl, greatly exasperated at the impropriety of the mandates, was so altered in his whole body that a man would hardly have known him. Rancour made deep furrows in his forehead, his flaming eyes glistened,



paleness discoloured the rosy complexion of his face, and I know what would have become of the chancellor, if in that hour of fury he had fallen as an apple into his hands while frantically raging. His indignation increased so much in his stifled breast, that it could not be kept from bursting out at least in part. "This son," said he, "of perdition, the worst of the evil ones, who first borrowed from the pleasantry of the French, and introduced among the English, the preposterous practice of kneeling, would not harass me, as you perceive, if I had not refused to learn the new craft offered to me!" He would fain have said more, whether true or false, but recalling his presence of mind, and repressing his rage, "If I have spoken amiss," said he, "O archbishop, I ask pardon." After these frivolous expressions, they applied themselves to the weighty matters. They consulted about the demands of the chancellor; and the counsel of the archbishop, that there should be a meeting of them both, was agreed to, about the middle of the day. The day was fixed for the fifth of the calends 28 July. of August; the place without Winchester. The chancellor allowed what they had settled to stand, and, having broken up the siege, returned to London.

§ 41. The earl, however, fearing his craftiness, brought thither four thousand Welsh, that, if the chancellor Preparatory arrangements. should endeavour to take him during the truce, they, being placed in ambush close beside the conference, might thwart his endeavours by a sally. Moreover, he commanded that it should be summoned, and required that every one of his men and others his adherents should be prepared to go to battle, should attend him at the place and on the day of the engagement, so that as the interview between himself and the lord of the whole land had been undertaken, at least he might escape alive, if he, who was more than a king, though less in his eyes, should transgress against the law, or should not consent to an arrangement. The chancellor, however, on the



other hand, commanded that one third of the soldiery with all the arms of all England should proceed to Winchester by the day appointed; moreover, at the expense of the king's revenue he also hired some Welsh, that if it should come to a contest with the earl, he might have an equal array, and javelins threatening javelins.

The meeting.

§ 42. They came to the interview as was before agreed on, and it happened to terminate better than was feared. The agreement, moreover, made between the earl and the chancellor was thus and in this way provided. First of all were named the three bishops of Winchester, London, and Bath, in whose fidelity each party considered himself secure. The bishops chose for the chancellor's part the three earls of Warren, of Arundel, of Clare, and certain other eight by name. For the earl's part, Stephen Ridel the earl's chancellor, William de Venneval, Reginald de Wasseville, and certain other eight by name. These all, some beholding some touching the holy Gospels, swore that they would provide satisfaction between the earl and the chancellor concerning their quarrels and questions, to the honour of both parties and the peace of the kingdom. And if hereafter any disagreement should happen between them, they would faithfully end it. The earl also and the chancellor swore that they would consent to whatever the aforesaid jury should settle; and this was the provision. Girard de Camville, being received into the chancellor's favour, the custody of the castle of Lincoln was reserved to him in peace and safety; the earl gave up the castles which he had taken, and the chancellor having received them, gave them over to the king's faithful and liege men, namely, to William de Wenn, the castle of Nottingham, and to Reginald de Wasseville the castle of Tickhill; and each of them gave an hostage to the chancellor, that they would keep those castles in the safe peace and fidelity of their lord the king, if he should return alive. If, however, the king should die



before his return, the aforesaid castles should be delivered up to the earl, and the chancellor should restore the hostages. The constables of the castles of the earl's honours should be changed by the chancellor, if the earl should show reason for their being changed. The chancellor, if the king should die, should not seek the disherison of the earl; but should promote him to the kingdom with all his power. Concluded solemnly at Winchester, on the seventh of the kalends of May.

25 April.

§ 43. The chancellor, by wonderful importunity and earnestness, persuaded first a part of the monks, and afterwards the whole congregation of Westminster, to permit his brother, a monk of Cadomo, to profess a cohabitation in Westminster, and to be elected by all for their abbot for his profession and cohabitation on a day appointed; and that this election should not be broken, security was taken by a bond, with the church's seal affixed as a testimony.

Affairs of  
Westminster.

§ 44. Geoffrey, a brother of King Richard and Earl John, but not by their mother, who had been consecrated archbishop of York at Tours, by the archbishop of Tours, by the pope's command, continually solicited by message John the king's brother and his own, that at the least, it might be permitted him to return to England; and having obtained his consent, he prepared to return. The intercourse of the brothers did not escape the chancellor's knowledge, who providing lest their natural genuine perverseness should increase, commanded the keepers of the coasts, that wherever that archbishop, who had abjured England for the three years of the king's travels, should disembark within the bounds of the kingdom, he should not be permitted to proceed, but by the will of the jury, to whose award the earl and the chancellor had taken oath to stand concerning every thing that should happen.

Geoffrey,  
archbishop  
of York, pre-  
pares to  
visit Eng-  
land.

§ 45. A certain Robert, prior of Hereford, a monk who did not think very meanly of himself, and gladly

Death of  
Robert, ab-  
bot of Mu-  
chelney.



forced himself into other people's business that he might intermix his own, had gone into Sicily to the king on the chancellor's messages ; where after the rest he did not forget his own interests ; and having by some means or other worried every body, succeeded in obtaining the abbacy of Muchelney to be granted to him and confirmed by the king. Into possession of which, by the chancellor's means, he entered, against the will of the convent, neither canonically, nor with a benediction ; and presently on the first day, at the first dinner, by greedily partaking of fresh eels without wine, and more than was proper, he fell into a languor, which the food undigested and lying heavily on an inflamed stomach, brought on. And lest the languor should be ascribed to his gluttony, he caused the monks of that place to be slandered of having given him poison.

Geoffrey,  
archbishop  
of York,  
seized by the  
chancellor.

§ 46. Geoffrey, archbishop of York, presuming upon the consent of his brother Earl John, his shipping being ready, came to Dover ; and presently having landed, first sought a church for prayer. There is there a priory of monks of the profession of Canterbury, whose oratory he entered with his clerks to hear mass, and his household was intent about unlading the ships. No sooner had the whole of his goods been landed, than suddenly the constable of the castle caused whatever he thought was the archbishop's to be brought into the town, understanding more in the command of his lord the chancellor than he had commanded. Certain also of the soldiers, armed under their tunics, and girt with swords, came into the monastery, that they might apprehend the pontiff ; whom when he saw, their intention being foreknown, he took a cross in his hands, and first addressing them and extending his hands towards his followers, he says, " I am the archbishop ; if ye seek me, let these go their way." And the soldiers reply, " Whether you be an archbishop or not, it is nothing to us ; one thing we know, that you are Geoffrey, the



son of King Henry, whom he begot on some strange bed, who before the king, whose brother you make yourself, have forsworn England for three years; if you are not come into the kingdom as a traitor to the kingdom; if you have brought letters of absolution, either say, or take the reproach." Then said the archbishop, "I am not a traitor, neither will I show you any letters." They then laid their hands on him there before the very altar, and violently dragged him out of the church against his will, and resisting, but not with force; who immediately being set without the threshold, excommunicated by name those who had laid hands on him, both present and whilst they were still holding him; nor did he receive the horse that they offered him that he might ride with them to the castle, because it was the property of the excommunicated. And so, outraging humanity, they dragged him on foot by the hands, and carrying the cross, all through the mud of the streets to the castle. After this they desired of their own good will to deal humanely with their captive, bringing him some of the best provisions which they had prepared for themselves; but he, being firmly resolved, by what he had now suffered, rejected their victuals as if it were an offering to idols, and refused to live on any thing but his own. The report spread over the kingdom more rapidly than the wind, those who had followed their lord at a distance came after, relating and complaining to all that the archbishop, the king's brother, thus landed, had been so treated and detained in prison.

§ 47. The archbishop was already three days in custody, and the chancellor, as soon as the case was made known to him, restored to him all his goods, and set him at liberty to depart whithersoever he should desire. He wrote, moreover, to Earl John, and to all the bishops, asserting, with an oath, that the aforesaid man had suffered the above-written injuries without his knowledge. The excuse profited little, because the occasion, which

The chancellor excuses his conduct.



had been long sought and which spontaneously offered itself against him, was most eagerly and tenaciously laid hold of. The authors of this daring act, who laid hands on the archbishop, as well as those who consented thereto, were all specially excommunicated in every church of the whole kingdom, that at least the chancellor, who was hateful to everybody, might be involved in the general malediction.

Earl John  
summons a  
meeting.

§ 48. Earl John, gnashing his teeth with anger against the chancellor, whom he hated, brought a weighty complaint before all the bishops and lords of the kingdom, of the infringement of the convention by the adverse party, by the arrest of his brother, to his own dishonour. The jurors are summoned and are sworn to stand by their plighted promise, and to bring it to pass as quickly as possible, that the perjurer and breaker of his faith should repair what he had done amiss by giving ample satisfaction. The affair, hitherto confined to trifles, now bears a serious aspect; the chancellor is summoned by the powerful authority of all his and the earl's mediators, to meet him and answer to the earl's accusations, and to submit to the law, the place at Lodbridge, the day the third of the nones of October.

5 October.

The chan-  
cellor comes  
to London.

§ 49. The earl, with the greatest part of the nobility of the kingdom all favouring him, had awaited the chancellor two days at the place of meeting, and on the third, in the morning, he sent on certain of his followers to London, still waiting at the place of meeting in case he who was expected should either dare or deign to come. The chancellor, dreading in himself the earl, and being suspicious of the judges, delayed to come to the place for two days; on the third, (because as every one feels conscious in his mind, so does he conceive in his breast both hope and fear for his deeds,) half-way between hope and fear, he attempted to go to the meeting. And behold! Henry Biset, a faithful man of his,



who had seen the above-mentioned party of the earl's friends passing on, putting frequently the spur to his horse, comes to meet the chancellor, and tells him that the earl, before daylight, had gone in arms to take London; and who was there, on that day, that did not take every thing as gospel, which that honourable man told them? but yet he was not guilty of falsehood, because he thought that what he had said was true. The chancellor, deceived, as all men are liable to be, immediately caused all the force that was with him to arm; and thinking that he was following close upon the earl, came before him to the city. The citizens being asked by him, for the earl was not yet come, that they would close the gates against him when he should come, refused, calling him a disturber of the land, and a traitor. For the archbishop of York, conscious of what would happen, whilst he was tarrying there some days, that he might see the end of the matter, by continual complaints and entreaties had excited them all against him; and then, for the first time, perceiving himself betrayed, he betook himself to the Tower, and the Londoners set a watch, both by land and water, that he might not escape. The earl, having knowledge of his flight, following him up with his forces, was received by the joyful citizens with lanterns and torches, for he came to town by night; and there was nothing wanting in the salutations of the flattering people, save that barbarous *Chaire Basileus!* which is, "Hail, dear lord!"

§ 50. On the next day, the earl and all the nobles of the land assembled in St. Paul's church, and first of all was heard the archbishop of York's complaint; after that, whosoever had aught against him was admitted. The accusers of the absent had an attentive and diligent hearing, and especially Hugh, bishop of Coventry, so prolix in words, who the day before had been his most familiar friend, who, as the worst pest is a familiar

A meeting in  
St. Paul's  
church.



enemy, having harangued more bitterly and perversely than all the rest, against his friend, did not desist until it was said by all, "We will not have this man to reign over us." So the whole assembly, without any delay, elected Earl John, the king's brother, chief justiciary of the whole kingdom, and ordaining that all the castles should be delivered to the custody of such as he should choose, they left only three of the weakest, and lying at a great distance from each other, to the now merely nominal chancellor. The chief justice after the earl, the justices itinerant, the barons of the exchequer, the constables of castles, all new, are appointed afresh. Amongst others then gainers, both the bishop of Winchester received the custodies which the chancellor had taken from him, without diminution, and the lord bishop of Durham received the county of Northumberland.

The result  
communi-  
cated to the  
chancellor.

Una salus  
victis nullam  
sperare salu-  
tem.

§ 51. That unlucky day was declining towards evening, when four bishops and as many earls, sent on the part of the assembly to the chancellor, explained to him, to the letter, the acts of the whole day. He was horror-struck at such unexpected presumption and arrogance, and, his vigour of mind failing, he fell to the earth so exhausted, that he foamed at the mouth. Cold water being sprinkled on his face, he revived, and having risen on his feet, he addressed the messengers with a stern countenance, saying, "There is one help for the vanquished, to hope for no help. You have conquered and you have bound incautiously. If the Lord God shall grant me to see my lord the king with my two eyes, be sure this day has shone inauspiciously for you. As much as in you lay, you have now delivered to the earl, whatever was the king's in the kingdom. Say to him, Priam still lives. You, who forgetful of your still surviving king, have elected to yourselves another to be lord, tell to that your lord, that all will turn out otherwise than he supposes. I will not give up the castles, I will not resign the seal." The messengers, having returned from him,



related to the earl what they had received, who ordered the Tower to be more closely besieged.

§ 52. The chancellor was sleepless the greater part of the night (because he who does not set his mind on honest studies and pursuits, will toss about wakeful through hate or love); and at the same time his people disturbed him more than his conscience, falling prostrate at his feet, and entreating with tears that he would yield to necessity, and not stretch forth his arms against the torrent. He, though harder than iron, is softened by the piteous counsel of those who were weeping round him; again and again having fainted with grief, at last, he with much ado assented that that should be done, which, being entirely destitute of aid, he was compelled to do. One of his brothers, and three, not ignoble, of his adherents, being permitted, not commissioned, announced to the earl at that time of night, that the chancellor, with what readiness it does not matter, was prepared to do and suffer whatever had been determined. He should avoid delay, because it has always been injurious for those who are prepared to defer. It should be done the next day, lest the wind should so veer, that it might be deferred for a year. These return to the Tower, and before day, the earl made known to his adherents that these things had passed.

§ 53. Meanwhile, the rising dawn left the ocean, and the sun having now appeared, the earl, with his whole troop, withdrew to the open field, which is without London towards the east; the chancellor went thither also, but less early than his adversaries. The nobles took the centre, around whom was next a circle of citizens, and beyond an attentive populace, estimated at ten thousand men. The bishop of Coventry first attacked the chancellor, rehearsing the several accusations of the preceding day, and ever adding something of his own. "It is not," said he, "either fit or bearable that such gross incapacity of one, should so often cause so many noble

He resolves  
to surrender.

A meeting  
between the  
earl and the  
chancellor.



and honourable men, and from such remote parts, to assemble for nothing. And since it is better to be troubled once for all, than always, I will conclude all in few words. It does not please, because it is not convenient, that you should any longer bear rule in the kingdom. You will be content with your bishopric, and the three castles with which we have indulged you, and the shelter of a great name. You will in the next place give hostages for giving up all the other castles, and for not seeking increased power or making tumults, and afterwards you will be able to depart freely whithersoever you may desire." Many spoke much in favour of this, none against; the lord of Winchester, although he was more eloquent than most of them, alone observed continued silence. At length the chancellor, scarcely permitted to speak, exclaimed, "Am I always to be a hearer only? and shall I never answer? Before all things, know ye each and every one, that I feel myself guilty of nothing that I should fear the mouth of any of you. I solemnly declare that the archbishop of York was taken, without either my knowledge or my will; that I will prove in the civil courts if you will, or in the ecclesiastical. Respecting the deficiencies of the king, if I have done anything amiss in that matter, Geoffrey Fitz-Peter, William Briwere, and Hugh Bardolf, whom I received from the king as councillors, would, if it were permitted them to speak, give satisfaction for me. Why and in what I have spent the king's treasure, I am ready to give account to the utmost farthing. I do not refuse to give hostages for delivering up the castles, though in this I ought rather to fear the king; yet as I must, I must. The name which you are not able to take away, and I am still to bear, I do not set light by. In short, I give you all to know, that I depose myself from no administration given me by the king. You, being many, have besieged me alone; you are stronger than I, and I, the king's chancellor and justiciary of the kingdom, am con-

*Semper ego  
auditor tantum?  
Nunquamne re-  
ponam?*



demned against all form of law; it is through necessity I yield to the stronger." The sun declining to the west, put an end to the allegations of the parties; the two brothers of the chancellor that was, and a certain third person, his chamberlain, who had also been his secretary, were received in hostage. The assembly is dissolved, the keys of the Tower of London being given up on the sixth of the ides of October. The chancellor started Oct. 10. for Dover, one, to wit, of the three castles of which mention was made; and the earl delivered, to those he chose and whom he trusted most, all the fortresses of the land which had been given up to him.

§ 54. Messengers are immediately despatched to the Land of Promise, to the king himself, both by the con- The chancellor's proceedings. demned and the condemners, each by his own party, sufficiently instructed to accuse or excuse. The chancellor, being uncomfortable here under the appellation of his lost authority, and the recollection of his present state, whilst he endeavoured by all means to elude the prohibition of his going abroad, got scoffed, not uniformly, nor once only. I will not recount how he was taken and detained, both in the habit of a monk and in that of a woman, because it is enough and more than enough to recollect what inestimable property and immense treasures the Flemish stripped him of, when at length he arrived in Flanders. His passage over being known, whatever revenue he had possessed in England was confiscated. A most dreadful contention is carried on between the mighty. The chancellor suspends his diocese which had been taken from him, and he denounces his anathema upon all those who trespassed against him. Nor was the archbishop of Rouen more remiss in the same way, for in revenge for his presumptuous excommunication of the exchequer barons, he commanded it to be announced throughout Normandy that William de Longchamp should be held as excommunicated. He was, however, unwilling to seem to fear the malediction, uttered against the invaders of the aforesaid bishopric,



nor did he believe that the sentence of a fugitive prelate could find its way before his Majesty's throne. So the face of the church of Ely was disfigured, they ceased throughout the diocese from every work of the Lord, the bodies of the dead lay unburied by all the ways. In Normandy, the like being returned, none under the archbishop's authority communicated with the chancellor; on his entry every church was suspended, and on his departure all the bells were rung, and the altars where he officiated cast down.

The papal  
legates sus-  
pend Nor-  
mandy.

§ 55. Two legates despatched into France by the Pope, at the instigation, though secret, as is reported, of the king of the French, came to Gisorz to visit Normandy, which they understood was a chief part of the kingdom of the French; but both the constable of the castle and the seneschal of Normandy would not admit them, excusing themselves with this shadow of a reason, that the visitation of any province should not be made unless with the approbation or in the presence of the lord of the land; all the kings of the English, and particularly Richard, being especially indulged with this privilege by the holy see. No allegation, whether real or probable, availed with the legates; their almost divine power rose and swelled with rage, though against those who heeded them not: the contemned authority of Roman majesty is exercised; they lay aside high flown sentences and long words. They threaten their adversaries with much bitterness; but, however, as they had not to plead with boys, the castle gates being shut against them, they stood without the doors. But their solace was not wanting, though they were repulsed. They reached with their power, where they could not approach in person. They excommunicated by name the constable of Gisorz and the seneschal of Normandy, there present, and suspended the whole of Normandy from every administration of the rites of the church. It was necessary to yield to their power; the church was silent immediately, and so remained the space of three weeks, until, the



Pope being supplicated, both the sentence against those named was remitted, and the suspension given out against Normandy. The book of liberty was restored to Normandy, and the voice of gladness, and the legates were prohibited to set foot therein.

§ 56. The Westminster monks, who before those days had so greatly excelled in magnanimity, that they would not stain their deeds for death itself, as soon as they saw a new era, changed also with the time, putting behind their backs whatever they had covenanted with the chancellor for his brother; with the connivance of the earl, they elected the prior of their house to be abbot, who also received immediately the benediction and staff from the bishop of London. The chancellor's brother, who by agreement should have been elected abbot, seeing the convent break their engagement, troubled thereat, departed with his half-modesty, carrying off with him, however, the bond of security, having made an appeal prior to the second election before legitimate witnesses, that nothing should be done against his stipulated promotion.

*Mona-tic  
affairs.*

The monks of Muchelney, after the example of those of Westminster, though not altogether in a similar way, expelled their principal, I do not know whether abbot or abbot elect, whom they had been forced to accept, casting forth the straw of his bed after him, and thrust him with much insult out of their island to the four winds of Heaven.

§ 57. The archbishop of Rouen being constituted by the earl justiciary of the kingdom, and supreme over affairs, having convoked, at Canterbury, the clergy and people, as the king himself had enjoined him, directed them to proceed to the election of an archbishop. The bishops of London and Winchester, however, were not present, being detained at London by the king's business, and the question being broached among the bishops who had assembled, which of them should be esteemed

*Election of  
the arch-  
bishop of  
Canterbury.*



the greater, whose the election ought to be, as the two aforesaid of chief dignity were absent, the prior of Canterbury solving the point of difficulty, made all equal in choosing a pontiff, and proceeding forth in public with his monks, in the face of the whole church, elected, as archbishop, Reginald, bishop of Bath, from the midst of the clergy.

His death.

§ 58. Reginald, elect of Canterbury, who would have proceeded to Rome for his pall, had the Fates permitted, having completed the solemnities which are usually celebrated for the elect at Canterbury, came to set things in order in the diocese of Bath, which he greatly loved, and by which he was more beloved. It is reported also, that he had obtained, as he desired, the assent of the prior and convent for electing and substituting in his place, Savaricus, archdeacon of Northampton, and had received the security. Returning from thence, he fell sick by the way, and was laid up very ill at his manor of Dokemeresfeld; and seeing nothing more likely to happen to him than death, he took the habit of a monk at the hands of his prior Walter, then tarrying with him, and receiving it, spoke these words, "God willed not that I should be archbishop, and I will not; God willed that I should be a monk, and I will!" Moreover, being in the last extremities, he took the king's letters to the justices, for conceding to Savaricus whatever diocese he should be elected to, and gave them to the prior of Bath, that by the authority of this instrument he might the sooner be promoted. Then having accomplished all things which relate to faith and penitence devoutly and with a sane mind, he fell asleep in the Lord on the seventh of the calends of January. His

Dec. 26.

#### EPITAPH.

And epitaph.

Dum Reginaldus erat bene seque suosque regebat;  
Nemo plus quærat; quicquid docuit faciebat.  
Sancti Swithuni nisi pratum præripuisset

Hunc de communi mors tam cito non rapuisset.  
Sed, quia pœnituit, minuit mors passa reatum;  
Fecit quod potuit, se dedit ad monachatum.

Whilst Reginald lived, he well governed both himself and his men. Let no one ask more; whatsoever he taught, he practised. If he had not grasped at Saint Swithin's pasture, death would not have snatched him so soon from the public. But, because he was penitent, a premature death diminished his supposed guilt; he did what he could, he dedicated himself to the monastic life.

The translation.

Walter, prior of Bath, and his convent without the clergy, elected to themselves for their future bishop Savaricus, archdeacon of Northampton, who was absent, and as yet ignorant of the decease of his fellow pontiff, and although the clergy resisted, they carried it out.

§ 59. The fleet of Richard, king of the English, put out to sea, and proceeded in this order. In the fore-front went three ships only, in one of which was the queen of Sicily and the young damsel of Navarre, probably still a virgin; in the other two, a certain part of the king's treasure and arms; in each of the three, marines and provisions. In the second line there were, what with ships and busses and men of war, thirteen; in the third, fourteen; in the fourth, twenty; in the fifth, thirty; in the sixth, forty; in the seventh, sixty; in the last, the king himself followed with his galleys. There was between the ships, and between their lines, a certain space left by the sailors at such interval, that from one line to another the sound of the trumpet from one ship to another, the human voice, could be heard. This also was admirable, that the king was no less cheerful and healthy, strong and mighty, light and gay, at sea, than he was wont to be by land. I conclude, therefore, that there was not one man more powerful than he in the world, either by land or sea.

Disposition of Richard's fleet.



Wrecked and  
plundered off  
Cyprus.

§ 60. Now, as the ships were proceeding in the aforesaid manner and order, some being before others, two of the three first, driven by the violence of the winds, were broken on the rocks near the port of Cyprus; the third, which was English, more speedy than they, having turned back into the deep, escaped the peril. Almost all the men of both ships got away alive to land, many of whom the hostile Cypriotes slew, some they took captive, some, taking refuge in a certain church, were besieged. Whatever also in the ships was cast up by the sea, fell a prey to the Cypriotes. The prince also of that island coming up, received for his share the gold and the arms; and he caused the shore to be guarded by all the armed force he could summon together, that he might not permit the fleet which followed to approach, lest the king should take again what had been thus stolen from him. Above the port, was a strong city, and upon a natural rock, a high and fortified castle. The whole of that nation was warlike, and accustomed to live by theft. They placed beams and planks at the entrance of the port, across the passage, the gates and entrances; and the whole land, with one mind, prepared themselves for a conflict against the English. God so willed, that the cursed people should receive the reward of their evil deeds by the hands of one who would not spare. The third English ship, in which were the women, having cast out its anchors, rode out at sea, and watched all things from opposite, to report the misfortune to the king, lest haply, being ignorant of the loss and disgrace, he should pass the place unrevenged. The next line of the king's ships came up after the other, and they all stopped at the first. A full report reached the king, who, sending heralds to the lord of the island, and obtaining no satisfaction, commanded his entire army to arm, from the first even to the last, and to get out of the great ships into the galleys and boats, and

follow him to the shore. What he commanded, was immediately performed; they came in arms to the port. The king being armed, leaped first from his galley, and gave the first blow in the war; but before he was able to strike a second, he had three thousand of his followers with him striking away by his side. All the timber that had been placed as a barricade in the port was cast down instantly, and the brave fellows went up into the city, as ferocious as lionesses are wont to be when robbed of their young. The fight was carried on manfully against them, numbers fell down wounded on both sides, and the swords of both parties were made drunk with blood. The Cypriotes are vanquished, the city is taken, with the castle besides; whatever the victors choose is ransacked, and the lord of the island is himself taken and brought to the king. He, being taken, supplicates and obtains pardon; he offers homage to the king, and it is received; and he swears, though unasked, that henceforth he will hold the island of him as his liege lord, and will open all the castles of the land to him, make satisfaction for the damage already done, and further bring presents of his own. On being dismissed after the oath, he is commanded to fulfil the conditions in the morning.

Isaac's submission.

§ 61. That night the king remained peaceably in the castle; and his newly sworn vassal flying, retired to another castle, and caused the whole of the men of that land, who were able to bear arms, to be summoned to repair to him, and so they did. The king of Jerusalem, however, that same night, landed in Cyprus, that he might assist the king and salute him, whose arrival he had desired above that of any other in the whole world. On the morrow, the lord of Cyprus was sought for and found to have fled. The king, seeing that he was abused, and having been informed where he was, directed the king of Jerusalem to follow the traitor by land with the half of the army, while he conducted the other part

Treachery,



and punish-  
ment.

by water, intending to be in the way, that he might not escape by sea. The divisions reassembled around the city in which he had taken refuge, and he, having sallied out against the king, fought with the English, and the battle was carried on sharply by both sides. The English would that day have been beaten, had they not fought under the command of King Richard. They at length obtain a dear-bought victory, the Cypriote flies, and the castle is taken. The kings pursue him as before, the one by land, the other by water, and he is besieged in the third castle. Its walls are cast down by engines hurling huge stones; he, being overcome, promises to surrender, if only he might not be put in iron fetters. The king consents to the prayers of the suppliant, and caused silver shackles to be made for him. The prince of the pirates being thus taken, the king traversed the whole island, and took all its castles, and placed his constables in each, and constituted justiciaries and sheriffs; and the whole land was subjected to him in everything just like England. The gold, and the silk, and the jewels from the treasures that were broken open he retained for himself; the silver and victuals he gave to the army. To the king of Jerusalem also he made a handsome present out of his booty.

Richard mar-  
ries Beren-  
garia.

And because Lent had already passed, and the lawful time of contract was come, he caused Berengaria, daughter of the king of Navarre, whom his mother had brought to him in Lent, to be affianced to him in the island.

Captures a  
Saracen ship,

§ 62. After these things, having taken again to the ships, whilst sailing prosperously towards Acre, he falls in with a merchant ship of immense dimensions, destined by Saladin to the besieged, laden with provisions and full of armed soldiers. A wonderful ship, a ship than which, with the exception of Noah's ark, we do not read of any having been greater. The intrepid king here rejoices, because every where he meets with a fit object



for valour ; he, first of his warriors, having summoned to his, the galleys of his followers, commences the naval action with the Turks. The ship was fortified with towers and bulwarks, and the desperate fought furiously, because "the only hope for the conquered is to have nothing to hope for." The assault was dreadful and the defence stout ; but what is there so hard, that the sturdy man who stoutly perseveres shall not subdue ? The followers of Mahomet are vanquished ; that ship the queen of ships is shattered and sunk, as lead in the mighty waters, and the whole property perished with its possessors. Mocomicolæ.

The king proceeding thence came to the siege of Acre, and was welcomed by the besiegers with as great joy, as if it had been Christ that had come again on earth to restore the kingdom of Israel. The king of the French had arrived at Acre first, and was very highly esteemed by the natives ; but on Richard's arrival, he became obscured and without consideration, just as the moon is wont to relinquish her lustre at the rising of the sun. and arrives at Acre.

§ 63. Henry, count of Champagne, whose whole store that he had brought both of provision and money was now wasted, comes to his king. He asks relief, to whom his king and lord caused to be offered a hundred thousand of Paris money, if, in that case, he would be ready to pledge to him Champagne. To that the count replied, "I have done what I could and what I ought, now I shall do what I am compelled by necessity ; I desired to fight for my king, but he would not accept of me, unless for my own ; I will go to him who will accept me : who is more ready to give than to receive." The king of the English, Richard, gave to Henry, count of Champagne, when he came to him, four thousand bushels of wheat, four thousand bacons, and four thousand pounds of silver. So the whole army of strangers out of every nation under heaven bearing the Christian His liberality to Henry, count of Champagne.



name, who had already assembled to the siege long before the coming of the kings, at the report of so great a largess, took King Richard to be their general and lord; the Franks only who had followed their lord remained with their poor king of the French.

His exploits. § 64. The king of the English, unused to delay, on the third day of his arrival at the siege, caused his wooden fortress, which he had called "Mate Grifun" when it was made in Sicily, to be built and set up, and before the dawn of the fourth day the machine stood erect by the walls of Acre, and from its height looked down upon the city lying beneath it; and there were thereon by sunrise archers casting missiles without intermission on the Turks and Thracians. Engines also for casting stones, placed in convenient positions, battered the walls with frequent volleys. More important than these, sappers making themselves a way beneath the ground, undermined the foundations of the walls; while soldiers bearing shields, having planted ladders, sought an entrance over the ramparts. The king himself was running up and down through the ranks, directing some, reproving some, and urging others, and thus was he every where present with every one of them, so that whatever they all did, ought properly to be ascribed to him. The king of the French also himself did not lightly assail them, who made as bold an assault as he could on the tower of the city which is called Cursed.

§ 65. The renowned Carracois and Mestocus, after Saladin the most powerful princes of the heathen, had at that time the charge of the besieged city, who after a contest of many days, promised by their interpreters the surrender of the city, and a ransom for their heads; but the king of the English desired to subdue their obstinacy by force; and wished that the vanquished should pay their heads for the ransom of their bodies, but, by the mediation of the king of the French, their



life and indemnity of limbs only was accorded them, if, after surrender of the city and yielding of every thing they possessed, the Holy Cross should be given up.

§ 66. All the heathen warriors in Acre were chosen Acre taken. men, and were in number nine thousand. Many of whom, swallowing many gold coins, made a purse of their stomachs, because they foresaw that whatever they had of any value would be turned against them, even against themselves, if they should again oppose the cross, and would only fall a prey to the victors. So all of them come out before the kings entirely disarmed, and outside the city without money are given into custody; and the kings, with triumphal banners having entered the city, divided the whole with all its stores into two parts between themselves and their soldiers; the pontiff's seat alone its bishop received by their united gift. The captives, moreover, being divided, Mestocus fell by lot to the portion of the king of the English, and Carracois, as a drop of cold water, fell into the burning mouth of the thirsty Philip, king of the French.

§ 67. The duke of Austria, who was also one of the ancient besiegers of Acre, followed the king of the English as a participator in the possession of his portion, and because, as his standard was borne before him, he was thought to take to himself a part of the triumph; if not by command, at least with the consent, of the offended king, the duke's standard was cast down in the dirt, and to his reproach and ridicule trampled under foot by them. The duke, although grievously enraged against the king, dissembled his offence, which he could not vindicate; and having returned to the place where he had carried on the siege, betook himself that night to his tent, which was set up again, and afterwards as soon as he could returned to his own country full of rancor.

§ 68. Messengers on the part of the captives having been sent to Saladin for their ransom, when the heathen Beheads his prisoners. could by no entreaty be moved to restore the Holy Cross,



the king of the English beheaded all his, with the exception of Mestocus only, who on account of his nobility was spared, and declared openly without any ceremony that he would act in the same way towards Saladin himself.

Jealousy between him and Philip.

§ 69. A certain Marquess of Montferrat, a smooth-faced man, had held Tyre, which he had seized on many years ago, to whom the king of the French sold all his captives alive, and promised the crown of the region which was not yet conquered; but the king of the English withstood him to the face. "It is not proper," said he, "for a man of your reputation to bestow or promise what is not yet obtained; but further, if the cause of your journey be Christ, when at length you have taken Jerusalem, the chief of the cities of this region, from the hand of the enemy, you will without delay or condition restore the kingdom to Guy, the legitimate king of Jerusalem. For the rest, if you recollect, you did not obtain Acre without a participator, so that neither should that which is the property of two be dealt out by one hand." Oh, oh, how fine for a godly throat! The marquess, bereft of his blissful hope, returns to Tyre, and the king of the French, who had greatly desired to strengthen himself against his envied ally by means of the marquess, now fell off daily; and this added to the continual irritation of his mind,—that even the scullion of the king of the English fared more sumptuously than the cupbearer of the French. After some time, letters were forged in the tent of the king of the French, by which, as if they had been sent by his nobles out of France, the king was recalled to France. A cause is invented which would necessarily be respected more than it deserved; his only son, after a long illness, was now despaired of by the physicians; France exposed to be desolated, if, after the son's death, the father (as it might fall out) should perish in a foreign land. So, frequent council being held between the kings hereupon, as they were both great and could not



dwell together, Abraham remaining, Lot departed from him. Moreover, the king of the French, by his chief nobles, gave security by oath for himself and his vassals, to the king of the English, that he would observe every pledge until he should return to his kingdom in peace.

§ 70. On that day the commonalty of the Londoners Meeting at London. was granted and instituted, to which all the nobles of the kingdom, and even the very bishops of that province, are compelled to swear. Now for the first time London, by the agreement conceded to it, found by experience that there was no king in the kingdom, as neither King Richard himself, nor his predecessor and father Henry, would have suffered it to be concluded for one thousand thousand marks of silver. How great evils forsooth may come forth of this agreement, may be estimated by the very definition, which is this. The commonalty is the pride of the common people, the dread of the kingdom, the ferment of the priesthood.

§ 71. The king of the French, with but few followers, Affairs of Palestine. returning home from Acre, left at that place the strength of his army to do nothing, to the command of which he appointed the bishop of Beauvais and the duke of Burgundy. The English king, having sent for the commanders of the French, proposed that in the first place they should conjointly attempt Jerusalem itself; but the dissuasion of the French discouraged the hearts of both parties, and dispirited the troops, and restrained the king, thus destitute of men, from his intended march upon that metropolis. The king, troubled at this, though not despairing, from that day forth separated his army from the French, and directing his arms to the storming of castles along the sea-shore, he took every fortress that came in his way from Tyre to Ascalon, though after hard fighting and deep wounds. But to Tyre he deigned not to go, because it was not in the compass of his part of the campaign.



## IN THE YEAR OF THE LORD MCXCH.

A. D. 1192.  
Miscella-  
neous trans-  
actions.

January.

1 February.

§ 72. Philip, king of the French, having left his companion Richard, king of the English, in the territory of Jerusalem amongst the enemies of the cross of Christ, returned to France, without obtaining either the liberation of the Holy Cross or of the Holy Sepulchre. Godfrey, bishop of Winchester, restored to his church a great part of the treasure, which, as is related above, he had appointed, on the third of the kalends of February. The feast of the Purification of the Blessed Mary was celebrated on the very Sunday of Septuagesima at Winchester. But the Sunday had nothing belonging to Sunday but its memory at vespers and matins, and the morning mass. One full hide of land at the manse which is called Morslede, of the village of Ciltecumba, was let to a certain citizen of Winchester of the name of Pentecuste, to hold for twenty years for the annual and free service of twenty shillings, without the privity of the convent.

11 February.

§ 73. Queen Eleanor sailed from Normandy and landed at Portsmouth on the third of the ides of February. The chancellor repaired to the king of the French, and deposed before him his complaint relative to the loss of his treasures in Flanders, but he got nothing more there than what makes men ridiculous.

The king of the French caused all manner of arms to be fabricated both day and night throughout his whole realm, and fortified his cities and castles, as was thought, by way of preparation for a struggle against the king of the English, if he should return from his journey. Which being known in the territories of the king of the English, his constables throughout Normandy, Le Mans, Anjou, Tours, Bourges, Poitou, and Gascony, of themselves fortified every place that could be fortified in the fullest manner. Moreover, the son of the king of Navarre, to spite the French, ravaged the country about Toulouse. A certain provost of the



king of the French, desiring to become greater than his forefathers, set up a castle on the confines of Normandy and France, where there had never yet been any fortification; which, ere it was built, the Normans, by the impulse of their natural anger, totally overthrew, and tore the provost himself to pieces.

§ 74. Queen Eleanor, a lady worthy of repeated mention, visited certain houses appertaining to her dower within the diocese of Ely. To meet her there came out of all the hamlets and manors, wherever she passed, men with women and little children, not all of the lowest class, a piteous and pitiable company, with their feet bare, their clothes unwashed, and their hair unshorn. They speak in tears, for which, for very grief, they had failed to utter words, nor was there need of an interpreter, as more than they desired to say might be read in the open page. Human bodies lay unburied every where throughout the country, because their bishop had deprived them of sepulture. The queen, on understanding the cause of so great severity, as she was very compassionate, taking pity on the people's misery for the dead, immediately neglecting her own, and following other men's matters, repaired to London; she entreated, nay, she demanded, of the archbishop of Rouen, that the confiscated estates of the bishop should be restored to the bishop, and that the same bishop should in the name of the chancery be proclaimed absolved from the excommunication denounced against him, throughout the province of Rouen. And who could be so harsh or obdurate that that lady could not bend him to her wishes? She, too, forgetful of nothing, sent word into Normandy to the lord of Ely, of the public and private restitution which she had obtained for him, and compelled him to revoke the sentence of excommunication he had pronounced against the exchequer barons. So by the queen's mediation there was peace between the implacable, though their vexation

Queen Eleanor interests herself in favour of the inhabitants of Ely.



was apparent, as the disaffection of their minds, contracted in their former hatred, could not be changed, without each giving some utterance to his feelings.

John, when  
about to em-  
bark for Nor-  
mandy,

is prevented  
by his mo-  
ther.

Council held  
at London,

§ 75. Earl John, sending messengers to Southampton, commanded shipping to be made ready for him to depart, as was thought, to the king of the French; but the queen his mother, fearing lest the light-minded youth, by the counsels of the French, might go to attempt something against his lord and brother, with anxious mind takes in hand with her utmost ability to divert the intention of her son. The fate of her former sons, and the untimely decease of both under their oppressing sins, recurring to her mind, moved, or rather pierced, the maternal bowels of compassion. She desired that their violence might be enough, and that at least, good faith being kept amongst her younger children, she, as their mother, might end her days more happily than had fallen to the lot of their deceased father. So having assembled all the peers of the realm, first at Windsor, secondly at Oxford, thirdly at London, and fourthly at Winchester, she with her own tears and the entreaties of the nobles with difficulty obtained that he would not cross the sea for this time. The earl, therefore, being in effect frustrated of his proposed passage, did what he could that way, and received the castles from the king's constables of Windsor and Wallingford, whom he had secretly called to him; and having received them, he delivered them over to his lieges to keep for him.

§ 76. By command of the archbishop of Rouen, there assembled at London the pillars of the church, the oracles of the laws, to discuss either something or nothing, as it often falls out, in matters of state. There was but one mind among all, to convene Earl John for the pre-occupation of the castles; but, because no one of them durst commit himself to another, every one desired in himself that the question should be proposed rather



by a deputy than by his own mouth. So whilst they all clamour to this end, and with this purpose, Æacus alone is wanting, to whom they all simultaneously agreed to resort; but even whilst among other matters they only casually discoursed of the late chancellor, behold! again is Crispinus at hand. The messengers of the chancellor, now again legate, enter the assembly, saluting the queen who was present, and all the rest, whom by chance they found together, on the part of their lord who had safely arrived the day before at Dover. The last clause of the mandates prohibited him from following up the ministration of his legation. Long were they all silent, and greatly astonished, intently kept their peace. At length it came to be the vote of all, that they should humbly entreat him to be their dictator and lord, whom they had assembled to judge as a perjurer and transgressor against their lord. So many of the nobles, of whom one was Echion, are sent, and that repeatedly, to Earl John, then staying at Wallingford, and laughing at their conventions. Humbly, and without austerity, they beg that he would hasten to meet the goat. "Lord!" say they, "he wears horns, beware!"

§ 77. The earl, not greatly moved, long suffered himself to be reverently entreated, but at length, satiated with the honour offered him, he came to London with the last intercessors, whom he most loved, sufficiently taught to answer to every question that might chance to be asked. The court rises up and compliments him on his entry, no order either of age or rank being observed; every body that first can, first runs to meet him, and desires himself to be first seen, eager to please the prince, because to have been acceptable to the great is not the last of praises. The leaders were at a stand. Of the castles, no mention is made; the whole discussion and consultation was about the chancellor. Should the earl advise, all are ready to proscribe him. They strive

The influence of Earl John.



by all means to soften the earl to consent, but they had a wild beast on their right hand. The earl, on being asked to answer, briefly declares, "The chancellor fears the threats of none of you, nor of you altogether, nor will he beg your love, if only he may succeed to have me alone his friend. He is to give me seven hundred pounds of silver by the seventh day, if I shall not have meddled between you and him. You see I am in want of money. To the wise, a word is sufficient." He said, and withdrew, leaving the conclusion of his proposition in the midst. The court, placed in a great strait, strained its counsel: it appeared expedient to every one to propitiate the man with more than was promised; the gift or loan of the money is approved, but not of their own, and so in the end it all falls upon the treasury of the absent king. Five hundred pounds of silver sterling out of the exchequer are lent to the earl by the barons, and letters to their liking against the chancellor are received. Nor is there delay; the queen writes, the clergy write, the people write, all unanimously advertise the chancellor to bolt, to cross the sea without delay, unless his ears are ticklish to hear rumours, unless he wishes to take his meals under the charge of armed soldiers.

His reflections.

§ 78. The chancellor stood aghast at the severity of the mandates, and was as pale as one who treads a snake with his bare feet. But, on retiring, is reported to have made only this manly reply:—"Let all who persecute me, know they shall see how great is he whom they have offended. I am not destitute of all counsel, as they reckon. I have one who serves me as a fine ear by true despatches. 'As long as I am an exile,' said he, 'patiently endure the things which you suffer. Every land is a home to the brave, believe one who has found it so by experience; persevere and preserve your life for a better day. A grateful hour, which is not hoped for, will overtake both you and me. Unlooked for, I shall return and triumph over my enemies, and again shall my

victory make thee a citizen in my kingdom, forbidden thee, and now not obeying me; haply it may hereafter be gratifying to us to reflect on this event.'"

§ 79. Because Winchester ought not to be deprived of its due reward for keeping peace with the Jews, as in the beginning of this book is related, the Winchester Jews, (after the manner of the Jews,) studious of the honour of their city, procured themselves notoriety by murdering a boy in Winchester, with many signs of the deed, although, perhaps, the deed was never done. The case was thus:—A certain Jew engaged a Christian boy, a pretender to the art of shoe-making, into the household service of his family. He did not reside there continually to work, nor was he permitted to complete anything great all at once, lest his abiding with them should apprise him of the fate intended for him; and, as he was remunerated better for a little labour there, than for much elsewhere, allured by his gifts and wiles, he frequented the more freely the wretch's house. Now, he was French by birth, under age, and an orphan, of abject condition and extreme poverty. A certain French Jew, having unfortunately compassionated his great miseries in France, by frequent advice persuaded him that he should go to England, a land flowing with milk and honey; he praised the English as liberal and bountiful, and that there no one would continue poor who could be recommended for honesty. The boy, ready to like whatever you may wish, as is natural with the French, having taken a certain companion of the same age as himself, and of the same country, got ready to set forward on his foreign expedition, having nothing in his hands but a staff, nothing in his wallet but a cobbler's awl.

Story of a boy  
killed by the  
Jews of Win-  
chester.

§ 80. He bade farewell to his Jewish friend; to whom the Jew replied, "Go forth as a man. The God of my fathers lead thee as I desire." And having laid his hands upon his head, as if he had been the scapegoat,



Character of  
London.

after certain muttering of the throat and silent imprecations, being now secure of his prey, continued,—  
“ Be of good courage ; forget your own people and native land, for every land is the home of the brave, as the sea is for the fish, and as the whole of the wide world is for the bird. When you have entered England, if you should come to London, you will quickly pass through it, as that city greatly displeases me. Every race of men, out of every nation which is under heaven, resort thither in great numbers ; every nation has introduced into that city its vices and bad manners. No one lives in it without offence ; there is not a single street in it, that does not abound in miserable obscene wretches ; there, in proportion as any man has exceeded in wickedness, so much is he the better. I am not ignorant of the disposition I am exhorting ; you have in addition to your youth, an ardent disposition, a slowness of memory, and a soberness of reason between extremes. I feel in myself no uneasiness about you, unless you should abide with men of corrupt lives ; for from our associations, our manners are formed. But let that be as it may. You will come to London. Behold, I warn you, whatever of evil or of perversity there is in any, whatever in all parts of the world, you will find in that city alone. Go not to the dances of panders, nor mix yourself up with the herds of the stews ; avoid the talus and the dice, the theatre and the tavern. You will find more braggadocios there than in all France, while the number of flatterers is infinite. Stage players, buffoons, those that have no hair on their bodies, Garamantes, pickthanks, catamites, effeminate sodomites, lewd musical girls, druggists, lustful persons, fortune-tellers, extortioners, nightly strollers, magicians, mimics, common beggars, tatterdemalions,—this whole crew has filled every house. So if you do not wish to live with the shameful, you will not dwell in London. I am not speaking against the learned, whether monks or Jews ;



although, still, from their very dwelling together with such evil persons, I should esteem them less perfect there than elsewhere.

§ 81. "Nor does my advice go so far, as that you should betake yourself to no city; with my counsel you will take up your residence nowhere but in a town, though it remains to say in what. Therefore, if you should land near Canterbury, you will have to lose your way; if even you should but pass through it. It is an assemblage of the vilest, entirely devoted to their, I know not whom, but who has been lately canonized, and had been the archbishop of Canterbury, as every where they die in open day by the streets for want of bread and employment. Rochester and Chichester are mere villages, and they possess nothing for which they should be called cities, but the sees of their bishops. Oxford, scarcely, I will not say satisfies, but sustains, its clerks. Exeter supports men and beasts with the same grain. Bath is placed, or rather buried, in the lowest parts of the valleys, in a very dense atmosphere and sulphury vapour, as it were at the gates of hell. Nor yet will you select your habitation in the northern cities, Worcester, Chester, Hereford, on account of the desperate Welchmen. York abounds in Scots, vile and faithless men, or rather rascals. The town of Ely is always putrefied by the surrounding marshes. In Durham, Norwich, or Lincoln, there are very few of your disposition among the powerful; you will never hear any one speak French. At Bristol, there is nobody who is not, or has not been, a soapmaker, and every Frenchman esteems soapmakers as he does nightmen. After the cities, every market, village, or town, has but rude and rustic inhabitants. Moreover, at all times, account the Cornish people for such as you know our Flemings are accounted in France. For the rest, the kingdom itself is generally most favoured with the dew of heaven, and the fatness of the

Canterbury.

Rochester.  
Chichester.

Oxford.

Exeter.

Bath.

Worcester.  
Chester.  
Hereford.

York.

Ely.

Durham,  
Norwich,  
Lincoln.

Bristol.

Cornwall.



earth ; and in every place there are some good, but much fewer in them all than in Winchester alone.

§ 82. " This is in those parts the Jerusalem of the Jews, in it alone they enjoy perpetual peace ; it is the school of those who desire to live well and prosper. Here they become men, here there is bread and wine enough for nothing. There are therein monks of such compassion and gentleness, clergy of such understanding and frankness, citizens of such civility and good faith, ladies of such beauty and modesty, that little hinders but I should go there and become a Christian with such Christians. To that city I direct you, the city of cities, the mother of all, the best above all. There is but one fault, and that alone in which they customarily indulge too much. With the exception I should say of the learned and of the Jews, the Winchester people tell lies like watchmen, but it is in making up reports. For in no place under heaven so many false rumours are fabricated so easily as there ; otherwise they are true in every thing. I should have many things too still to tell you about business ; but for fear you should not understand or should forget, you will place this familiar note in the hands of the Jew my friend, and I think, too, you may sometime be rewarded by him." The short note was in Hebrew. The Jew made an end of his speech, and the boy having understood all things for good, came to Winchester.

§ 83. His awl supplied him, and his companion as well, with food, and the cruel courtesy and deceitful beneficence of the Jew was by the letter unfortunately obtained to their relief. Wherever the poor fellows worked or eat apart by day, they reposed every night in one little bed in the same old cottage of a certain old woman. Days follow days, and months months, and in the same way as we have hitherto so carefully described, our boys hasten the time of their separation that they may meet again. The day of the Holy Cross had

arrived, and the boy that same day, whilst working at his Jew's, being by some means put out of the way, was not forthcoming. Now the passover, a feast of the Jews, was at hand. His companion, during the evening, greatly surprised at his absence, not returning home to bed, was terrified that night with many visions and dreams. When he had sought him several days in all corners of the city without success, he came to the Jew and simply asked if he had sent his benefactor anywhere; whom when he found violently enraged above his general disposition, from having been so courteous the day before, having noticed the incoherence of his words and change of countenance, he presently fired up, and as he was of a shrill voice and admirable readiness of speech, he broke out into abuse, and with great clamour challenged him with taking his companion away. "Thou son of a sordid harlot," said he, "thou robber, thou traitor, thou devil, thou hast crucified my friend. Alas, me! wherefore have I not now the strength of a man! I would tear you to pieces with my hands." The noise of his quarrelling in the house is heard in the street, Jews and Christians come running together from all quarters. The boy persists, and now, deriving courage from the crowd, addressing those present, he alleged his concern for his companion as an excuse. "O you good people," said he, "who are assembled, behold if there is any sorrow like my sorrow. That Jew is a devil; he has stolen away my heart from my breast—he has butchered my only companion, and I presume, too, that he has eaten him. A certain son of the devil, a Jew of French birth, I neither know nor am acquainted with; that Jew gave my comrade letters of his death-warrant to that man. To this city he came, induced, or rather seduced. He often gave attendance upon this Jew, and in his house he was last seen." He was not without a witness to some points, in as much as a Christian woman, who, contrary to the canons, had



nursed up the young Jews in the same house, constantly swore that she had seen the boy go down into the Jew's store, without coming up again. The Jew denies it—the case is referred to the judges. The accusers are defective; the boy because he was under age, the woman because the service of Jews had rendered her ignominious. The Jew offered to clear his conscience of the evil report. Gold contented the judges. Phineas gave and pleased, and the controversy ceased.

The bishop  
of Chester  
persecutes  
the monks of  
Coventry.

§ 84. The bishop of Chester, who, from his detestation of religion, had expelled the monks from Coventry, entirely broke down all the workshops there were in the monastery, that by the altered appearance of the place, all remembrance of its past state might be taken away from posterity. And further, lest the ruins of the walls should some day bespeak their author, the church of the place, which had not been finished, was found a ready plea, and having bestowed the materials upon it, without charge, he began to build. Moreover, he appointed the masons and plasterers their hire out of the chattels of the monastery. He selected two principal manors of the monks for his own proper use; this arrangement being made for their abuse—that wherever he should eat, some special delicacy provided out of the issues of the aforesaid manors should be presented to him to eat, that he might glory in the victory, and might batten, as it were, on the viscera of the monks, whom he had by his wickedness overcome. But all the rest of their revenues he allotted to the prebends, some of which he conferred and settled for ever on the Romish church, appropriated to certain cardinals of the apostolic see, appointing them and their canonical successors in the same titles to be canons of the church of Coventry, that if by any chance there should be any delay to the transactions before the Pope, he should make the whole court the more ready in the defence of his part; he conferred the other prebends on others, but not one on



any whom he did not know for certain to be an advocate of no religion. They built eagerly, even the absent canons, around the church spacious and lofty villas, perhaps for their own use, if even once in their lives any chance should offer a cause for visiting the place. None of the prebendaries regularly resided there any more than they do elsewhere ; but doing great things for the gates of palaces, they have left to poor vicars induced by a trifling remuneration to insult God, to them have they intrusted the holy chant and vanquished household gods and bare church walls.

§ 85. This forsooth is true religion ; this should the church imitate and emulate. It will be permitted the secular canon to be absent from his church as long as he may please, and to consume the patrimony of Christ where, and when, and in whatsoever luxuries he may list. Let them only provide this, that a frequent vociferation be heard in the house of the Lord. If the stranger should knock at the doors of such, if the poor should cry, he who lives before the doors will answer, (he himself being a sufficiently needy vicar,) " Pass on, and seek elsewhere for alms, for the master of the house is not at home." This is that glorious religion of the clerks, for the sake of which the bishop of Chester, the first of men that durst commit so great iniquity, expelled his monks from Coventry. For the sake of clerks irregularly regular, that is to say of canons, he capriciously turned out the monks ; monks who, not with another's, but with their own mouth praised the Lord, who dwelt and walked in the house of the Lord with unanimity all the days of their life, who beyond their food and raiment knew nothing earthly, whose bread was always for the poor, whose door was at all times open to every traveller : nor did they thus please the bishop, who never loved either monks or their order. A man of bitter jocularities, who even though he might sometimes spare, never ceased to worry the monks. O what a fat morsel,



and not to be absorbed, is a monk! many a thousand has that bit choked, while the wicked at their death have had it for their viaticum. If as often as a monk were calumniated and reproached he were consumed, all religion would be absorbed before many ages. At all times and in every place, whether the bishop spoke in earnest or in jest, a monk was some part of his discourse. Nor did the expulsion of his own monks satisfy him, but ever after, true to himself, he continued censuring the monks as before. But as he could not desist from speaking of them, lest he should incur the opprobrium of a detractor, if in their absence he should carp at their order, he resolved to keep some monk abiding with him in his court; that his conversation about them might be made less offensive, by the presence and audience of one of them. So he took as his quasi chaplain, a certain monk, scarcely of age, but yet who had professed at Burton, whom to the scandal of religion he generally took about with him. O excess of sorrow! Even among the angels of God is found iniquity. The monk, wise and prudent, seduced to the delusion, hardened his forehead as a harlot, that he a monk should not blush when monks were reviled. Alas! how great a thirst for roving and riding! Hear me and attend a little; you shall see how the riding of this rider concluded. On a certain day, as the bishop was standing over his workmen at Coventry, his monk attending close by his side, on whom the bishop familiarly resting, said, "Is it not proper and expedient, my monk, even in your judgment, that the great beauty of so fair a church, that such a comely edifice, should rather be appropriated to gods than devils?" And while the monk was hesitating at the obscurity of the words, he added, "I," said he, "call my clerks gods, and monks devils!" And presently putting forth the forefinger of his right hand towards his clerks, who were standing round him, continued, "I say ye are gods, and ye are all the children

of the Highest!" And having turned again to the left, concluded to the monk, "But ye monks shall die like devils; and as one and the greatest of your princes ye shall fall away into hell, because ye are devils upon earth. Truly if it should befall me to officiate for a dead monk, which I should be very unwilling to do, I would commend his body and soul not to God, but to the devil!" The monk, who was standing in the very place that the monks had been plundered of, did not refute the insult on the monks, and because on such an occasion he was silent, met, as he deserved, with the reward of eternal silence being imposed upon him. For suddenly a stone falling from the steeple of the church, dashed out the brains of the monk who was attending on the bishop, the bishop being preserved in safety for some greater judgment.

§ 86. The king of the English, Richard, had already completed two years in conquering the region around Jerusalem, and during all that time there had no aid been sent to him from any of his kingdoms. Nor yet were his only and uterine brother, John, earl of Mortain, nor his justiciaries, nor his other nobles, observed to take any care to send him any part of his revenues; but they did not even think of his return. However, prayer was made without ceasing by the church to God for him. The king's army was decreased daily in the land of promise, and besides those who were slain with the sword, many thousands of the people perished every month by the too sudden extremities of the nightly cold and the daily heat. When it appeared that they would all have to die there, every one had to choose whether he would die as a coward or in battle. On the other side, the strength of the Gentiles greatly increased, and their confidence was strengthened by the misfortunes of the Christians; their army was relieved at certain times by fresh troops; the weather was natural to them; the place was their native country; their labour, health;

Richard's  
exploits in  
Palestine.

Condition of  
his army.



their frugality, medicine. Amongst the Normans, on the contrary, that became a disadvantage which to the adversaries brought gain. For if our people lived sparingly even once in a week, they were rendered less effective for seven weeks after. The mingled nation of French and English fared sumptuously every day, and (saving the reverence of the French) even to loathing, at whatever cost, while their treasure lasted; and the well known custom of the English being continually kept up even under the very clarions and the clangor of the trumpet or horn, they gaped with due devotion while the chalices were emptied to the dregs. The merchants of the country, who brought the victuals to the camp, were astonished at their wonderful and extraordinary habits, and could scarcely believe even what they saw to be true, that one people, and that small in number, consumed threefold the bread and a hundred-fold the wine more than that whereon many nations of the Gentiles had been sustained, and some of those nations innumerable. And the hand of the Lord was deservedly laid upon them according to their merits. So great want of food followed their great gluttony, that their teeth scarcely spared their fingers, as their hands presented to their mouths less than their usual allowance. To these and other calamities, which were severe and many, a much greater was added by the sickness of the king.

Richard's  
illness.

§ 87. The king was extremely sick, and confined to his bed; his fever continued without intermission; the physicians whispered that it was an acute semiter-tian. And as they despaired of his recovery even from the first, terrible dismay was spread from the king's abode through the camp. There were few among the many thousands who did not meditate on flight, and the utmost confusion of dispersion or surrender would have followed, had not Hubert Walter, bishop of Salisbury, immediately assembled the council. He obtained

by forcible allegations that the army should not break up, until a truce were demanded of Saladin. All well armed stand in array more steadily than usual, and with a threatening look concealing the reluctance of their mind, they feign a desire for battle. No one speaks of the indisposition of the king, lest the secret of their intense sorrow should be disclosed to the enemy; for it was thoroughly understood that Saladin feared the charge of the whole army less than that of the king alone; and if he should know that he was dead, he would instantly pelt the French with cow-dung, and intoxicate the best of the English drunkards with a dose which should make them tremble.

§ 88. In the mean time, a certain Gentile, called Saffatin, came down to see the king, as he generally did; he was a brother of Saladin, an ancient man of war, of remarkable politeness and intelligence, and one whom the king's magnanimity and munificence had charmed even to the love of his person and favour of his party. The king's servants greeting him less joyfully than they were accustomed, and not admitting him to an interview with the king, "I perceive," said he, by his interpreter, "that you are greatly afflicted, nor am I ignorant of the cause. My friend, your king, is sick, and therefore you close his doors to me." And falling into tears with his whole heart, he exclaimed, "O God of the Christians, if thou be a God, do not suffer such a man, so necessary to thy people, to fall so suddenly!" He was entrusted with their avowal, and thus spoke on, "In truth I forewarn you, that if the king should die while things stand as they are at present, all you Christians will perish, and all this region will in time to come be ours without contest. Shall we at all dread that stout king of France, who before he came into battle was defeated? Whose whole strength, which three years had contributed, the short space of three months consumed. Hither will he on no account return any

Saffatin's  
speech in  
praise of  
Richard.



more; for we always esteem this as a sure token (I am not speaking craftily, but simply,) that those whom at first we think cowardly, we ever after find worse. But that king, of all the princes of the Christian name, whom the round circle of the whole world encompasses, is alone worthy of the honour of a captain and the name of a king, because he commenced well, and went on better, and will be crowned by the most prosperous result, if only he shall remain with you a short time.

§ 89. "It is not a new thing for us to dread the English, for fame reported to us his father to be such, that had he come even unarmed to our parts, we should all have fled though armed, nor would it have appeared inglorious to us to be put to flight by him. He our terror, a wonderful man in his day, is dead; but, like the phoenix, renewed himself, a thousand times better, in his son. It was not unknown to us how great that Richard was, even while his father lived; for all the days of his father, we had our agents in those parts, who informed us both of the king's deeds, and of the birth and death of his sons. He was justly beloved for his probity by his father above all his brothers, and preferred before them to the government of his states. It was not unknown to us that when he was made duke of Aquitaine he speedily and valiantly crushed the tyrants of the province, who had been invincible before his grandfather and great grandfather;—how terrible he was even to the king of France himself, as well as to all the governors of the regions on his borders. None took of his to himself, though he always pushed his bounds into his neighbours'. It was not unknown to us, that his two brothers, the one already crowned king, the other duke of Bretagne, had set themselves up against their dear father, and that he ceased not to persecute them with the rigour of war, till he had given them both eternal repose, vanquished as they were by the length of the prosecution. Besides, as you will the more wonder

at, we know all the cities of your parts by name; nor are we ignorant that the king of your country was beaten at Le Mans through the treachery of his own people; that he died at Chinon, and was buried at Fontevraud.

§ 90. "It is not through ignorance that I do not relate who made himself the author of such unusual and mighty slaughter against us. O! if that Richard, whom although I love yet I fear, if he were despatched out of the way, how little should we then fear, how very little should we make account of that youngest of the sons, who sleeps at home in clover! It was not unknown to us, that Richard, who nobly succeeded his great father in the kingdom, immediately set forward against us even in the very year of his coronation. The number of his ships and troops was not unknown to us before his setting forth. We knew, even at the very time, with what speed he took Messina, the well fortified city of Sicily, which he besieged; and although none of our people believed it, yet our fears increased, and fame added false terrors to the true.

§ 91. "His valour, unable to rest in one place, proceeded through a boundless region, and everywhere left trophies of his courage. We questioned among ourselves whether he made ready to subdue, for his God, the land of promise only, or, at the same time to take the whole world for himself. Who shall worthily relate the capture of Cyprus? Verily had the island of Cyprus been close to Egypt, and had my brother Saladin subdued it in ten years, his name would have been reckoned by the people among the names of the gods. When, however, we at last perceived that he overthrew whatever resisted his purpose, our hearts were melted as the hoar frost melts at the appearance of the approaching sun, for as much as it was said of him that he ate his enemies alive. And if he were not presently, on the very day of his arrival before Acre, received freely into the city with



open gates, fear alone was the cause. It was not from their desire to preserve the city, but through dread of the torments promised them and their despair of life that they fought so bravely, or rather desperately, fearing this more than death, endeavouring this by all means, namely, that they should not die unrevenged. And this was not from sheer obstinacy, but to follow up the doctrine of our faith. For we believe that the spirits of the unavenged wander for ever, and that they are deprived of all rest. But what did the rashness and timidity of the devoted profit them? Being vanquished by force, and constrained by fear to surrender, they were punished with a more lenient death than they had expected. And yet, oh! shame on the Gentiles! their spirits wander unavenged! I swear to you by the Great God, that if, after he had gained Acre, he had immediately led his army to Jerusalem, he would not have found even one of our people in the whole circuit of the Christians' land; on the contrary, we should have offered to him inestimable treasure, that he might not proceed, that he might not prosecute us further.

§ 92. "But, thanks be to God! he was burdened with the king of the French, and hindered by him, like a cat with a hammer tied to its tail. To conclude, we, though his rivals, see nothing in Richard that we can find fault with but his valour; nothing to hate but his experience in war. But what glory is there in fighting with a sick man? And although this very morning I could have wished that both you and he had all received your final doom, now I compassionate you on account of your king's illness. I will either obtain for you a settled peace with my brother, or at the least a good and durable truce. But until I return to you, do not by any means speak of it to the king, lest, if he should be excited, he may get worse, for he is of so lofty and impatient a disposition, that, even though he should needs presently die, he would not consent to an arrangement,



without seeing the advantage on his side !” He would have spoken further, but his tongue, languishing and failing for sorrow, would not continue his harangue, so with his head resting in his clasped hands he wept sore.

§ 93. The bishop of Salisbury, and such of the most trusty of the king’s household as were present, who had secretly deliberated with him upon this subject, reluctantly consented to the truce which before they had determined to purchase at any price, as if it had been detested, and not desired by them. So their right hands being given and received, Saffatin, when he had washed his face, and disguised his sorrow, returned to Jerusalem, to Saladin. The council was assembled before his brother, and after seventeen days of weighty argument, he with difficulty succeeded in prevailing on the stubbornness of the Gentiles to grant a truce to the Christians. The time was appointed and the form approved. If it please King Richard, for the space of three years, three months, three weeks, three days, and three hours, such a truce shall be observed between the Christians and the Gentiles, that whatever either one party or the other in anywise possesses, he shall possess without molestation to the end ; it will be permitted during the interval, that the Christians at their pleasure may fortify Acre only, and the Gentiles Jerusalem. All contracts, commerce, every act and every thing shall be mutually carried on by all in peace. Saffatin himself is despatched to the English as the bearer of this decree.

Truce granted by Saladin to the English.

§ 94. Whilst King Richard was sick at Jaffa, word was brought him that the duke of Burgundy was taken dangerously ill at Acre. That day was the day for the king’s fever to take its turn, and through his delight at this report, it left him. The king immediately with uplifted hands imprecated a curse upon him, saying, “ May God destroy him, for he would not destroy the enemies of our faith with me, although he had long served in my pay.” On the third day the duke died ; as

Richard’s recovery.



soon as his decease was known, the bishop of Beauvais, having left the king with all his men, came in haste to Acre; the French out of all the towns assembled before him, all but Henry, count of Champagne, King Richard's nephew by his sister. And the bishop being made their leader and bully, set forth a proclamation and commanded them all to return home.

The French  
return home.

§ 95. The fleet was made ready, and the glorious prince retreating from the East with his cowardly troop, sails over the Etruscan sea. Having landed on the German coast, he spread abroad among the people, during the whole of his journey, that that traitor the king of England, from the first moment of his arrival in Judea, had endeavoured to betray his lord the king of the French to Saladin; that, as soon as he had obtained Tyre, he caused the marquess to be murdered; that he had despatched the duke of Burgundy by poison; that at the last he had sold generally the whole army of the Christians who did not obey him. That he was a man of singular ferocity, of harsh and repulsive manners, subtle in treachery, and most cunning in dissimulation. That on that account the king of the French had returned home so soon; that on that account the French who remained, had left Jerusalem unredeemed. This report gained strength by circulation, and provoked against one man the hatred of all.

Philip plots  
against  
Richard.

§ 96. The bishop of Beauvais having returned to France, secretly whispered in the king's ear, that the king of England had sent assassins to France who would murder him. The king, alarmed at that, appointed, though against the custom of his country, a chosen body guard; he further sent ambassadors to the emperor of Germany with presents, and carefully persuaded his imperial majesty to a hatred of the king of England. So it was enjoined by an imperial edict, that all cities and princes of the empire should take the king of the English by force, if by chance in his return from

Judea he should happen to pass through their countries, and present him to him alive or dead. If any one spared him, he should be punished as the public enemy of the empire. All obeyed the emperor's charge; and especially that duke of Austria whom the king of England had dismissed at Acre.

§ 97. Henry, count of Champagne, now the only one of the French nobles left in Judea, returned to the king of the English, to Jaffa; and when he announced to him both the death of the duke of Burgundy and the departure of the French, the hope of the king so revived, that he presently experienced a perfect convalescence with a healthy perspiration. And having resumed his strength of body more by the high temper of his mind than by repose or nourishment, he issued a command through the whole coast from Tyre to Ascalon, that all who were able to serve in the wars should come to the service at the king's charges. There assembled before him a countless multitude, the greater part of whom were foot; which being rejected as they were useless, he mustered the horse, and scarcely found five hundred knights and two thousand shield-bearers whose lords had perished. And not mistrustful on account of their small number, he being a most excellent orator, strengthened the minds of the fearful in a seasonable harangue. He commanded that it should be proclaimed through the companies that on the third day they must follow the king to battle, either to die as martyrs or to take Jerusalem by storm. This was the sum of his project, because as yet he knew nothing of the truce. For there was no one who durst even hint to him, who had so unexpectedly recovered, that which, without his knowledge, they had undertaken through fear of his death. However, Hubert Walter, bishop of Salisbury, took council with Count Henry concerning the truce, and obtained his ready concurrence in his wishes. So having deliberated together by what stratagem they might be able without danger to hinder such

Richard prevented from attacking Jerusalem.



a hazardous engagement, they conceived one of a thousand, namely, to dissuade the people if possible from the enterprise. And the matter turned out most favourably; the spirit of those who were going to fight had so greatly failed, even without dissuasion, that on the appointed day, when the king according to his custom leading the van, marshalled his army, there were not found of all the knights and shield-bearers above nine hundred. On account of which defection, the king, greatly enraged, or rather raving, and champing with his teeth the pine rod which he held in his hand, at length unbridled his indignant lips as follows:—"O God!" said he, "O God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me? For whom have we foolish Christians, for whom have we English come hither from the furthest parts of the earth to bear our arms? Is it not for the God of the Christians? O fie! How good art thou to us thy people, who now are for thy name given up to the sword; we shall become a portion for foxes. O how unwilling should I be to forsake thee in so forlorn and dreadful a position, were I thy Lord and advocate as thou art mine! In sooth, my standards will in future be despised, not through my fault but through thine; in sooth, not through any cowardice of my warfare, art thou thyself, my King and my God, conquered this day, and not Richard thy vassal."

His speech.

He sanctions  
the truce  
with Saladin.

§ 98. He said, and returned to the camp extremely dejected; and as a fit occasion now offered, Bishop Hubert and Henry, count of Champagne, approaching him with unwonted familiarity, and as if nothing had yet been arranged, importuned under divers pretexts the king's consent for making such overtures to the Gentiles as were necessary. And thus the king answered them: "Since it generally happens that a troubled mind rather thwarts than affords sound judgment—I, who am greatly perplexed in mind, authorize you, who have as I see a collected mind, to arrange what you shall think most proper for the good of peace." They having gained



their desires, chose messengers to send to Saffatin upon these matters; Saffatin, who had returned from Jerusalem, is suddenly announced to be at hand; the count and the bishop go to meet him, and being assured by him of the truce, they instruct him how he must speak with the lord their king. Saffatin being admitted to an interview with the king as one who before had been his friend, could scarcely prevail with the king not to make himself a sacrifice, and to consent to the truce. For so great were the man's strength of body, mental courage, and entire trust in Christ, that he could hardly be prevailed upon not to undertake in his own person a single combat with a thousand of the choicest Gentiles, as he was destitute of soldiers. And as he was not permitted to break off in this way, he chose another evasion, that, after a truce of seven weeks, the stipulations of the compact being preserved, it should remain for him to choose whether it were better to fight or to forbear. The right hands are given by both parties for faithfully observing this last agreement; and Saffatin, more honoured than burthened with the king's present, goes back again to his brother, to return at the expiration of the term for the final conclusion or breaking off of the above truce.

§ 99. Richard, king of England, held a council at Acre, and there prudently regulating the government of that state, he appointed his nephew, Henry, count of Champagne, on whom he had formerly conferred Tyre, to be captain and lord of the whole land of promise. Only he thought proper to defer his consecration as king till haply he might be crowned at Jerusalem. King Richard now thinking to return home, when with the assistance of Count Henry he had appointed chosen men for all the strongholds that had been taken in his territories, found Ascalon alone without ward or inhabitant for want of people. Wherefore taking precaution that it might not become a receptacle of the

His arrangements before leaving Palestine.



Gentiles, he caused the ramparts and fortifications of the castle to be cast down. The seventh day of the seventh week appeared, and behold Saffatin, with many mighty ones who desired to see the face of the king, drew near; the truce was confirmed on both sides by oath, this being added to that which had been previously settled, that during the continuance of the truce no one, whether Christian or Gentile, should inhabit Ascalon, and that the whole of the tillage pertaining to the town should remain to the Christians. Hubert, bishop of Salisbury, and Henry, captain of Judea, together with a numerous band, went up to Jerusalem to worship in the place where the feet of Christ had stood. And there was woful misery to be seen, captive confessors of the Christian name, wearing out a hard and constant martyrdom; chained together in gangs, their feet blistered, their shoulders raw, their backsides goaded, their backs wealed; they carried materials to the hands of the masons and stone-layers to make Jerusalem impregnable against the Christians. When the captain and the bishop had returned from the sacred places, they endeavoured to persuade the king to go up; but the worthy indignation of his noble mind could not consent to receive that from the courtesy of the Gentiles, which he could not obtain by the gift of God.

RICHARD OF CIRENCESTER'S  
DESCRIPTION OF BRITAIN,

WITH

*A Life of the Author,*

TO WHICH IS ADDED,

THE ORIGINAL LATIN TEXT.



THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN  
AND IRELAND OF CIRCUMSTANCES  
DESCRIPTION OF BRITAIN

THE ORIGINAL LATIN TEXT

NOTICE  
OF  
THE LIFE AND WORKS  
OF  
RICHARD OF CIRENCESTER.

---

RICHARD, surnamed from his birth-place Richard of Cirencester, flourished from the middle to the latter end of the fourteenth century. No traces of his family or connections can be discovered; though they were at least of respectable condition, for he received an education which in his time was far beyond the attainment of the inferior ranks of society. In 1350 he entered into the Benedictine monastery of St. Peter, Westminster, during the abbacy of — de Lytlington, as appears from the rolls of the abbey; and his name occurs in various documents of that establishment in the years 1387, 1397, and 1399.

He devoted his leisure hours to the study of British and Anglo-Saxon history and antiquities, in which he made such proficiency that he is said to have been honoured with the name of the Historiographer. Pitts informs us, without specifying his authority, that Richard visited different libraries and ecclesiastical establish-



ments in England in order to collect materials. It is at least certain that he obtained a license to visit Rome, from his abbot, William of Colchester, in 1391; and there can be little doubt that a man of so industrious, observant, and sagacious a character profited by this journey to extend his historical and antiquarian knowledge, and to augment his collections. This license is given by Stukeley from the communication of Mr. Widmore, librarian of Westminster, and bears honourable testimony to the morals and piety of our author, and his regularity in performing the discipline of his order. He probably performed this journey in the interval between 1391 and 1397, for he appears to have been confined in the abbey infirmary in 1401, and died in that or the following year. Doubtless his remains were interred in the cloisters of the abbey, but we cannot expect to find any memorial of a simple monk. We have abundant cause to regret that he was restrained in the pursuit of his favourite studies, by the authority of his abbot. In the seventh chapter of his first book he enters into a spirited justification of himself, but from the preface to his Chronology he appears to have found it necessary to submit his better judgment to the will of his superior.

His works are—

*Historia ab Hengista ad Ann.* 1348, in two parts. The first contains the period from the coming of the Saxons to the death of Harold, and is preserved in the public library of the University of Cambridge, Ff. i. 28. Whitaker, the historian of Manchester, thus speaks of it:—"The hope of meeting with discoveries as great in the Roman, British, and Saxon history as he has given us concerning the preceding period, induced me to exa-

mine the work. But my expectations were greatly disappointed. The learned scholar and the deep antiquarian, I found sunk into an ignorant novice, sometimes the copier of Huntingdon, but generally the transcriber of Geoffrey. Deprived of his Roman guides, Richard showed himself as ignorant and as injudicious as any of his illiterate contemporaries about him." (a)

The second part is probably a manuscript contained in the library of the Royal Society, p. 137, with the title of *Britonum Anglorum et Saxonum Historia*.

In the library of Bennet Coll. Cambridge is *Epitome Chronic. Ric. Cor. West. Lib. I.*

Other works of our author are supposed to be preserved in the Lambeth library, and at Oxford.

His theological writings were—

*Tractatus super Symbolum Majus et Minus*, and *Liber de Officiis Ecclesiasticis*.—In the Peterborough Library.

But the treatise to which Richard owes his celebrity is that now presented to the reader. Its first discoverer was Charles Julius Bertram, Professor of the English Language in the Royal Marine Academy at Copenhagen, who transmitted to the celebrated antiquary, Doctor Stukeley, a transcript of the whole in letters, together with a copy of the map. From this transcript Stukeley published an Analysis of the work, with the Itinerary, first in a thin quarto, in 1757, and afterwards in the second volume of his *Itinerarium Curiosum*. In the same year the original itself was published by Professor Ber-

(a) Hist. of Manchester, vol. i. p. 58, 4to.



tram at Copenhagen, in a small octavo volume, with the remains of Gildas and Nennius, under this title—

*Britannicarum Gentium Historiæ Antiquæ Scriptores tres: Ricardus Corinensis, Gildas Badonicus, Nennius Banchorensis, &c.*

Of this treatise Bertram thus speaks in his preface :  
“The work of Richard of Cirencester, which came into my possession in an extraordinary manner with many other curiosities, is not entirely complete, yet its author is not to be classed with the most inconsiderable historians of the middle age. It contains many fragments of a better time, which would now in vain be sought for elsewhere ; and all are useful to the antiquary \* \* \* \* \*. It is considered by Dr. Stukeley, and those who have inspected it, as a jewel, and worthy to be rescued from destruction by the press. From respect for him I have caused it to be printed.”

Of the map he observes : “I have added a very ancient map of Roman Britain, skilfully drawn according to the accounts of the ancients, which in rarity and antiquity excels the rest of the Commentary of Richard.”

THE  
ANCIENT STATE OF BRITAIN.

---

---

BOOK I.

---

---

CHAPTER I.

1. THE shore of Gaul would be the boundary of the world, did not the Island (*a*) of Britain claim from its magnitude almost the appellation of another world; for if measured to the Caledonian promontory (*b*) it extends more than eight hundred miles in length (*c*).

2. Britain was first called by the ancients Albion (*d*),  
from its *white* cliffs; and afterwards in the language of  
More correctly 540 miles.  
Albion.

(*a*) The early Greeks and Romans doubted whether Britain was an island, or part of the continent. This uncertainty gave rise to a controversy which was not settled till the time of the proprætor Julius Agricola.—*Tac. Vit. Agric. c. 38. Dio Cass. Hist. Rom. lib. 39.*

(*b*) Dunnet Head.

(*c*) Richard gives to great an extent to our island, which, according to the most accurate observations, stretches only from lat.  $49^{\circ} 48'$ , the most southern point, to Dunnet Head, which is in lat.  $58^{\circ} 40'$ , or scarcely 540 geographical miles.

(*d*) Various explanations have been given of the names of Albion and Britain, applied to our island. Some derive Albion from the white rocks which bound the coast; some from Albion, a son of Neptune, who is represented as its first discoverer and cultivator: others have likewise derived the name Britain from the Phœnician or Hebrew *Baratanac*, signifying the land of tin. It was also called



of the natives, Britain. Hence all the islands hereafter described were denominated British (*e*).

3. Britain is situated between the north and west (*f*), opposite to, though at some distance from, Germany, Gaul, and Spain, the most considerable parts of Europe, and is bounded by the Atlantic Ocean.

4. On the south of Britain lies Belgic Gaul, from which coast passengers usually sail to the Rhutupian port (*g*). This place is distant from Gessoriacum (*h*), a town of the Morini, the port most frequented by the Britons, fifty miles, or according to others, four hundred and fifty stadia. From thence may be seen the country of the Britons, whom Virgil in his Eclogues describes as separated from the whole world,—

“ — penitus toto divisos orbe Britannos.”

5. By Agrippa, an ancient geographer, its breadth is by the ancients *Hyperborea*, *Atlantica*, *Cassiteris*, *Romana*, and *Thule*.

According to the British Triads, “ the three names given to the Isle of Britain, from the beginning, were: before it was inhabited, the name of *Clas Merddyn* (or the green spot defended by water); after it was inhabited, *Y Vél Ynys* (the honey island); and, after it was brought under one government by Prydain, son of Aedd, it was called *Ynys Prydain* (or the Isle of Britain).

In some old writings it is also termed *Yr Ynys Wen* (or the white island).

(*e*) This part is taken from Pliny, who enumerates the British isles in the following order:—Orcades 40; Acmodæ 7; Hæbudes 30. Between Britain and Ireland, Mona, Menapia, Ricnea, Vectis, Silimnus, Andros; beneath, Siambis, and Axuntos: on the opposite side, towards the German Sea, the Glessariæ, called Electrides by the later Greek writers, from the amber found there; and last of all Thule.

He refers to others mentioned by different authors: *viz.* Mictis, Scandia, Dumnia, Bergos, and Nerigos.

(*f*) That is, from Rome. Richard, in copying the Roman writers, adopted their expressions in regard to the relative positions of places.

(*g*) Richborough, Kent.

(*h*) Boulogne.

estimated at three hundred miles; but with more truth by Bede at two hundred, exclusive of the promontories (*i*). If their sinuosities be taken into the computation, its circuit will be three thousand six hundred miles. Marcian, a Greek author, agrees with me in stating it at MDCCCLXXV (*j*).

## CHAPTER II.

1. ALBION, called by Chrysostom Great Britain, is, according to Cæsar, of a triangular shape, resembling Sicily. One of the sides lies opposite to Celtic Gaul. One angle of this side, which is the Cantian promontory (*k*), is situated to the east; the other, the Ocrinian promontory (*l*), in the country of the Damnonii, faces the south, and the province of Tarraconensis in Spain. This side is about five hundred miles in length.

North  
Foreland.  
Lizard Point.

2. Another side stretches towards Ireland, and the west, the length of which, according to the opinion of the ancients, is seven hundred miles.

3. The third side is situated to the north, and is opposite to no land except a few islands (*m*); but the angle of this side chiefly trends towards Germania Magna (*n*). The length from the Novantian Chersonesus (*o*), through

Rens of  
Galloway.

(*i*) Richard errs in supposing the estimation of Bede more accurate than that of Agrippa.

(*j*) The numerals are here so incorrect that it is difficult to discover what number was meant by Richard. Marcian observes that the circuit of our island is not more than 28604 stadia, or 3575 miles, nor less than 20526, or 2576 miles. Hence Bertram is led to prefer the greater number.

(*k*) North Foreland.

(*l*) Lizard Point.

(*m*) The Orkney and Shetland isles.

(*n*) Under this name the ancients comprised not only Germany proper, but Denmark, Norway, &c.

(*o*) Rens of Galloway.



the country of the Taixali, to the Cantian promontory (*p*) is estimated at eight hundred miles. Thus all erroneously compute the circuit of the island to be two thousand miles; for from the Cantian promontory to Ocrinum (*q*), the distance is four hundred miles; from thence to Novantum, a thousand; and from thence to the Cantian promontory, two thousand two hundred. The circuit of the whole island is therefore three thousand six hundred miles (*r*).

4. Livy and Fabius Rusticus compare the form of Britain to an oblong shield or battle-axe; and as according to Tacitus it bears that figure on the side of Caledonia, the comparison was extended to the whole island, though the bold promontories at its further extremity give it the shape of a wedge. But Cæsar and Pomponius Mela assert that its form is triangular.

5. If credit may be given to the celebrated geographer Ptolemy and his contemporary writers, the island resembles an inverted Z (*s*); but according to the maps the comparison is not exact. The triangular shape, however, seems to belong to England alone (*t*).

(*p*) North Foreland.

(*q*) Lizard Point.

(*r*) Bertram has endeavoured to reconcile the various and discordant calculations given by different ancient authors of the circuit of our island. On such vague principles as these estimations are made, it would be almost impossible, even now, for two persons to produce the same result.

(*s*) Ptolemy's expression is obscure: but he was evidently led to this supposition by the notion that Caledonia or Scotland trended to the east, as appears from his latitudes and longitudes. This form, therefore, he not unaptly compares to the inverted Z. It would be a trespass on the patience of the reader to attempt to reconcile what is irreconcilable.

(*t*) These words are chiefly taken from Tacitus. The obscurity of the expression, and the absurdity of the comparison, will sufficiently show the ignorance of those ancients whose works have reached the present time, in regard to our island.—*Tacit. Vit. Agricolaë, sect. 10.*

## CHAPTER III.

1. THE original inhabitants of Britain, whether indigenous or foreign, are, like those of most other countries, unknown. The Jews alone, and by their means the contiguous nations, have the happiness of tracing their descent since the creation of the world from undoubted documents. Original inhabitants.

2. From the difference of personal appearance different conjectures have been drawn. The red hair and large limbs of the Caledonians proclaim their German origin; the painted faces and curled locks of the Silures, and their situation opposite to Spain, corroborate the assertion of Tacitus, that the ancient Iberians passed over, and occupied this country and Ireland. Those who live nearest the Gauls resemble them, either from the strength of the original stock, or from the effects which the same positions of the heavens produce on the human body.

3. If I were inclined to indulge a conjecture, I might here mention that the Veneti (*u*) in their commercial expeditions first introduced inhabitants and religion into this country. Writers are not wanting, who assert that Hercules came hither and established a sovereignty. But it is needless to dwell on such remote antiquities and idle tales (*v*). Venetians.

(*u*) The Veneti, a tribe seated on the coast of Armorica or Bretagne, distinguished for their maritime power, and with whom Cæsar waged war. Their territory, according to his description, was part of Celtic Gaul, and the present Vannes was their capital.

(*v*) To these conjectures relative to the original inhabitants, and subsequent colonists of Britain, it may not be uninteresting to add the accounts preserved in the Welsh Triads.

The historical Triads record that the first colonists of Britain were *Cymry*, who originally came from *Defrobani Gwlad Yr Hav*,



Gauls.

4. On the whole, however, it is probable that the Gauls occupied the contiguous regions. According to Tacitus, their sacred rites and superstitions may be traced; nor is the language very different; and lastly, the tradition of the druids, with the names of the states which still retain the same appellations as the people sprung from the cities of Gaul, who came hither and began to cultivate the country (*w*).

5. According to Cæsar, the country was extremely populous, and contained numerous buildings, not dissimilar to those of the Gauls. It was rich in cattle.

6. The inhabitants of the southern part were the most civilized, and in their customs differed little from the Gauls. Those of the more distant parts did not raise corn; but lived on fruits and flesh. They were ignorant of the use of wool and garments, although in severe

the summer land, or Tauric Chersonesus. There they have left many traces of their name preserved by ancient authors, among which we may instance the *Cimmerian* Bosphorus.

Subsequent colonists arrived from the neighbouring continent at various times. The *Loegrwys* (Loegrians) from Gascogne; the *Brython* from *Lydaw* (Britanny), who were descended from the original stock of the *Cymry*. Two descents are also mentioned in Alban, or North Britain; one called the tribe of *Celyddon*, the other the primitive *Gwyddelians*. Another descent is said to have been made in the south, in *Ynys Wyth*, or the Isle of Wight, by the men of *Galedin* (the Belgæ), when their native country was inundated. Another colony called the *Corani* came from the country of the *Pwyl*, and settled on the sea coast, about the river Humber. A descent in Alban, or North Britain, of a colony of *Gwyddelian Ficti*, who are described as coming from the sea of *Loçlyn* (the Baltic); and a partial settlement of the men of *Loçlyn* (Scandinavians), who were expelled after remaining for three generations.

The arrival of the Romans and Saxons is also mentioned, as well as some partial settlements of the *Gwyddelians* from Ireland.

(*w*) We discover a few cities in Gaul, bearing nearly the same appellations as those of Britain; and in both countries we find the *Atrebates*, the *Morini*, the *Ædui*, the *Serones*, the *Menapii*, and the *Rhemi*.

weather they covered themselves with the skins of sheep or deer. They were accustomed to bathe in the rivers.

7. All the Britons formerly stained their bodies of a blue colour, which according to Cæsar gave them a more terrible appearance in battle. They wore their hair long, and shaved all parts of the body except the head and the upper lip.

8. Ten or twelve Britons had their wives in common; and this custom particularly prevailed among brethren, and between fathers and sons; but the children were considered as belonging to him who had first taken the virgin to wife. The mothers suckled their own children, and did not employ maids and nurses.

9. According to Cæsar also they used brass money, and iron rings of a certain weight instead of coin (*x*).

10. The Britons deemed it unlawful to eat hares (*y*), fowls, or geese; but they kept those animals for pleasure.

11. They had pearls, bits made of ivory, bracelets, vessels of amber and glass, agates, and, what surpasses all, great abundance of tin.

12. They navigated in barks, the keels and ribs of which were formed of light materials; the other parts were made of wicker and covered with the hides of oxen (*z*). During their voyages, as Solinus asserts, they abstain from food (*a*).

(*x*) The natives of China and Japan follow a similar custom in regard to gold and silver, which are not coined, but pass according to weight.

(*y*) It seems that they considered the appearance of a hare a fortunate omen; for the Roman historians observe that Boadicea, after haranguing her troops, let loose a hare which she had concealed in her garments.

(*z*) This species of boat is still used on the Welsh rivers, and is called a coricle in English, and *cwm* in Welsh. It is so light that a man may carry one on his back.

(*a*) Richard has mistaken the sense of Solinus, who, in describing the passage from Great Britain to Ireland, observes that from its shortness they abstained from food. "Navigantes escis abstinent, pro freti latitudine." C. 25.



Military af-  
fairs.

13. Britain produces people and kings of people, as Pomponius Mela writes in his third book; but they are all uncivilized, and in proportion as they are more distant from the continent, are more ignorant of riches; their wealth consisting chiefly in cattle and land. They are addicted to litigation and war, and frequently attack each other, from a desire of command, and of enlarging their possessions. It is customary indeed for the Britons to wage war under the guidance of women, and not to regard the difference of sex in the distribution of power.

14. The Britons not only fought on foot and on horseback, but in chariots drawn by two horses, and armed in the Gallic manner. Those chariots, to the axle-trees of which scythes were fixed, were called *covini*, or wains.

15. Cæsar relates that they employed cavalry in their wars, which before the coming of the Romans were almost perpetual. All were skilled in war; each in proportion to his family and wealth supported a number of retainers, and this was the only species of honour with which they were acquainted (*b*).

16. The principal strength of the Britons was in their infantry, who fought with darts, large swords, and short targets. According to Tacitus, their swords were blunt at the point.

17. Cæsar in his fourth book thus describes their mode of fighting in that species of chariots called *essedæ* (*c*). At first they drove through the army in all directions, hurling their darts; and, by the terror of the horses, and the

(*b*) In all periods the Britons seem to have been divided into numerous petty communities or states, headed by chiefs, who are here dignified with the title of kings. From the jealousies and weakness attending such a state of society, the island first became a prey to the Romans, and afterwards to the Saxons; and when the Britons had retired to the mountains of Wales, the same causes hastened the annexation of their country to England.

(*c*) In the early ages chariots were universally used in war. In the Scriptures they are frequently mentioned as forming the principal strength of an army; and the mode of fighting in chariots

noise of the wheels, generally threw the ranks of the enemy into disorder. When they had penetrated between the troops of cavalry, they leaped from their chariots, and waged unequal war on foot. Meanwhile the chariots were drawn up at a distance from the battle, and placed in such a position, that if pressed by the enemy, the warriors could effect a retreat to their own army. They thus displayed the rapid evolutions of cavalry and the firmness of infantry, and were so expert by exercise, as to hold up the horses in steep descents, to check and turn them suddenly at full speed, to run along the pole, stand on the yoke, and then spring into the chariot.

18. The mode of fighting on horseback threatened equal danger to those who gave way, or those who pursued. They never engaged in close lines, but in scat-

among the Greeks and Trojans, according to the description of Homer, was exactly similar to that of the Britons. The steeds of his heroes were

“ Practised alike to stop, to turn, to chase,  
To dare the shock, or urge the rapid race.”

His warriors sometimes drive through the ranks of the enemy, sometimes fight from their chariots, and sometimes alight and maintain the combat on foot, while their chariots retire to the rear.

“ This counsel pleased, the godlike Hector sprung  
Swift from his seat ; his clanging armour rung.  
The chief's example follow'd by his train,  
Each quits his car and issues on the plain ;  
By orders strict the charioteers enjoin'd  
Compel the coursers to their ranks behind.”

The Britons, however, appear to have devised an improvement in this mode of warfare, which was unknown to the Greeks. Their chariots seem to have been of two kinds, the *covini* or wains, heavy and armed with scythes, to break the thickest order of the enemy ; and the *essedæ*, a lighter kind, adapted probably to situations and circumstances in which the *covini* could not act, and occasionally performing the duties of cavalry. The *essedæ*, with the cavalry, were pushed forward to oppose the first landing of Cæsar ; and Cassivellaunus afterwards left 4000 *essedæ* as a corps of observation to watch his movements.—*Cæsar. Comment. lib. 5. § 15.*



tered bodies, and with great intervals; they had their appointed stations, and relieved each other by turns; and fresh combatants succeeded those who were fatigued. The cavalry also used darts.

Government. 19. It is not easy to determine the form of government in Britain previous to the coming of the Romans. It is however certain that before their times there was no vestige of a monarchy, but rather of a democracy, unless perhaps it may seem to have resembled an aristocracy (*d*). The authority of the druids in affairs of the greatest moment was considerable. Some chiefs are commemorated in their ancient records, yet these appear to have possessed no permanent power; but to have been created, like the Roman dictators, in times of imminent danger. Nor are instances wanting among them, as among other brave nations, when they chose even the leader of their adversaries to conduct their armies. He, therefore, who before was their enemy, afterwards fought on their side.

20. The Britons exceeded in stature both the Gauls and the Romans. Strabo affirms that he saw at Rome some British youths, who were considerably taller than the Romans.

Ornaments. 21. The more wealthy inhabitants of South Britain were accustomed to ornament the middle finger of the

(*d*) The government of the ancient Britons may be denominated patriarchal. Each community was governed by its elders; and every individual who could not prove his kindred to some community, through nine descents, and the same number of collateral affinities, was not considered as a freeman. Beyond this degree of kindred, they were formed into new communities. The elders of the different communities were subordinate to the elders of the tribes. But in times of public danger, as is recorded in the Triads, some chief of distinguished abilities was intrusted with the supreme authority over the tribes or communities, who united in common defence.—Such were Caswallon (Cassivellaunus), Caradwg (Caractacus), and Owain, son of Maesen.

left hand with a gold ring; but a gold collar (*e*) round the neck was the distinguishing mark of eminence. Those of the northern regions, who were the indigenous inhabitants of the island from time immemorial, were almost wholly ignorant of the use of clothes, and surrounded their waists and necks, as Herodian reports, with iron rings, which they considered as ornaments and proofs of wealth. They carried a narrow shield, fitter for use than ornament, and a lance, with a sword pendant from their naked and painted bodies. They rejected or despised the breast-plate and helmet, because such armour impeded their passage through the marshes.

22. Among other particulars, this custom prevailed in Britain. They stopped travellers and merchants, and compelled them to relate what they had heard, or

(*e*) This *torques*, chain, or rather wreath, is frequently alluded to by the early British bards.

“ Yet in the battle of Arderydd I wore the *golden torques*.”  
Merddin Avellanaw.

“ Four and twenty sons I have had  
Wearing the *golden wreath*, leaders of armies.”  
Llywarch Hén.

“ Of all who went to Cattraeth, wearing the *golden torc or wreath*.”  
Aneurin.

The same bard states that in the battle of Cattraeth were three hundred and sixty who wore the *golden torques*.

We give a description of one of these ornaments found near the castle of Harlech, in Merionethshire, in 1692. “ It is a wreathed bar of gold, or perhaps three or four rods jointly twisted, about four feet long, but naturally bending only one way, in the form of a hatband. It is hooked at both ends. It is of a round form, about an inch in circumference, and weighs eight ounces.”—*Gibson's Camden*, p. 658.

Another mark of dignity was a string of amber beads worn round the head. To this Aneurin alludes—

“ With wreaths of *amber* twined round his temples.”

These beads have been frequently found in tumuli, particularly in those on Salisbury Plain.—See *Turner's Vindication of the Welsh Bards*.—*Owen's Elegies of Llywarch Hén*.



knew, worthy of notice. The common people usually surrounded foreign merchants in the towns, and obliged them to tell from whence they came, and what curious things they had observed. On such vague reports they often rashly acted, and thus were generally deceived; for many answered them agreeably to their desires with fictitious stories (*f*).

Burial.

23. Their interments were magnificent; and all things which they prized during life, even arms and animals, were thrown into the funeral pile. A heap of earth and turf formed the sepulchre (*g*).

(*f*) This is Cæsar's account of a Gallic custom; but it is applied, not without reason, to the Britons, and indeed is equally applicable to all uncivilized people.

(*g*) As the classic authors have left us no description of the modes of interment among the Britons, Richard was induced, by the conformity of their manners and customs to those of the Gauls, to adopt the words used by Cæsar in his account of the Gallic funerals. Unfortunately the remains of the British bards afford little assistance in supplying this deficiency. It appears however that the Britons raised tumuli over their dead, and continued the practice till after the introduction of Christianity; and that their other modes of interment were the *carne'd*, or heap of stones; the *cistvaen*, or stone chest; and perhaps the *cromlech*, or hanging stone. From a curious fragment commemorating the graves of the British warriors, which is printed in the first volume of the Welch Archæology, we learn further, that they buried their dead on the tops of hills and lofty cliffs, on declivities, in heaths and secluded valleys, on the banks and near the fords of rivers, and on the sea-shore "where the ninth wave breaks." Allusions are also made to corresponding stones raised on these graves; and it is said, "the *long* graves in Gwanas, no one knows to whom they belong nor what is their history."

As the modes of interment among all early nations were in many respects similar, there is perhaps no part of our national antiquities which has given scope to so much conjecture as this. The reader who is desirous of more particular information relative to this subject, may at least find amusement in consulting the works of Stukeley, Douglas's *Nenia Britannica*, the *Archæologia*, and various accounts scattered in different periodical publications.

## CHAPTER IV.

1. ALL the Britons, like the Gauls, were much ad-<sup>Sacred rites.</sup>dicted to superstitious ceremonies; and those who laboured under severe disorders, or were exposed to the dangers of war, either offered human victims, or made a vow to perform such a sacrifice.

2. The druids were employed in the performance of these cruel rites; and they believed that the gods could not be appeased unless the life of a man was ransomed with human blood. Hence arose the public institution of such sacrifices; and those who had been surprised in theft, robbery, or any other delinquency, were considered as the most acceptable victims. But when criminals could not be obtained, even the innocent were put to death, that the gods might be appeased.

3. The sacred ceremonies could not be performed except in the presence of the druids; and on them devolved the office of providing for the public as well as private rites. They were the guardians of religion and the interpreters of mysteries; and being skilled in medicine, were consulted for the preservation or restoration of health.

4. Among their gods, the principal object of their worship was Mercury (*h*). Next to him they adored Justice (under the name of Astarte), then Apollo, and

(*h*) This passage has puzzled the British antiquaries, because it militates against the grand principle of the druidic theology, and because, as they assert, no traces of the Greek or Roman deities are found among the early Britons. Possibly some of the British tribes might have brought this mode of worship from Gaul; but more probably the assertion was derived from the misconception of the ancient authors themselves, who gave the names of their own deities to the objects of adoration distinguished by similar attributes in other countries. The account is borrowed from Cæsar's description of the Gauls, lib. vi. § 15.



Mars (who was called Vitucadrus), Jupiter, Minerva, Hercules, Victory (called Andate), Diana, Cybele, and Pluto. Of these deities they held the same opinions as other nations.

5. The Britons, like the Gauls, endeavoured to derive their origin from Dis or Pluto, boasting of this ancient tradition of the druids. For this reason they divided time, not by the number of days, but of nights, and thus distinguished the commencement of the month, and the time of their birth. This custom agrees with the ancient mode of computation adopted in Genesis, chapter i. (i).

Druids.

6. The druids, being held in high veneration, were greatly followed by the young men for the sake of their instructions. They decided almost all public and private controversies, and determined disputes relative to inheritance or the boundaries of lands. They decreed rewards and punishments, and enforced their decisions by an exclusion from the sacrifices. This exclusion was deemed the severest punishment; because the interdicted, being deemed impious and wicked, were shunned as if contagious; justice was refused to their supplications, and they were allowed no marks of honour (k).

7. Over the druids presided a chief, vested with supreme authority. At his death he was succeeded by the next in dignity; but if there were several of equal rank, the contest was decided by the suffrages of their body; and sometimes they even contended in arms for this honour (l).

(i) "And the *evening* and the morning were the first day," &c. ver. 5. We also still say a *se'nnight*, a fortnight.

(k) Like the excommunication of the Catholic church.

(l) Such a custom would contravene the principles of the druidic or bardic system, which prohibited them from using arms. The remark seems to have been extended to a general application by Richard, from a single instance recorded by Cæsar, of a druidic election in Gaul thus decided.

8. The druids went not to war, paid no tribute like the rest of the people, were exempted from military duties, and enjoyed immunities in all things. From these high privileges many either voluntarily entered into their order, or were placed in it by friends or parents.

9. They learnt a number of verses, which were the only kind of memorials or annals in use among them (*m*). Some persons accordingly remained twenty years under

(*m*) According to the opinion of the Welsh antiquaries, the system of druidical knowledge forms the basis of the Triads. If this be the case, it must be confessed that the bards possessed a profound knowledge of human nature, uncommon critical sagacity, and a perfect acquaintance with the harmony of language and the properties of metre. For example, the subjects of the poetical Triads are,

The Welsh language.

Fancy and invention.

The design of poetry.

Nature of just thinking.

Rules of arrangement.

Rules of description.

Variety of matter and invention.

Rules of composition ; comprising the laws of verse, rhyme, stanzas, consonancy or alliteration, and accent.

We quote a few of these Triads to show their nature and structure.

The three qualifications of poetry ;—endowment of genius, judgment from experience, and happiness of mind.

The three foundations of judgment ;—bold design, frequent practice, and frequent mistakes.

The three foundations of learning ;—seeing much, suffering much, and studying much.

The three foundations of happiness ;—a suffering with contentment, a hope that it will come, and a belief that it will be.

The three foundations of thought ;—perspicuity, amplitude, and justness.

The three canons of perspicuity ;—the word that is necessary, the quantity that is necessary, and the manner that is necessary.

The three canons of amplitude ;—appropriate thought, variety of thought, and requisite thought.



their instruction, which they did not deem it lawful to commit to writing, though on other subjects they employed the Greek alphabet. "This custom," to use the words of Julius Cæsar, "seems to have been adopted for two reasons: first, not to expose their doctrines to the common people; and, secondly, lest their scholars, trusting to letters, should be less anxious to remember their precepts; for such assistance commonly diminishes application, and weakens the memory."

Transmigra-  
tion of souls.

10. In the first place they circulated the doctrine that souls do not die, but migrate into other bodies (*n*). By this principle they hoped men would be more powerfully actuated to virtue, and delivered from the fear of death. They likewise instructed students in the knowledge of the heavenly bodies, in geography, the nature of things, and the power of the gods (*o*).

11. Their admiration of the mistletoe must not be

(*n*) According to the Triads, the theology of the bards was pure monotheism. They taught also the transmigration of souls; believing that the soul passed by death through all the gradations of animal life, from Anoom, the bottomless abyss, or lowest degree of animation, up to the highest degree of spiritual existence next to the Supreme Being. Human nature was considered as the middle point of this scale. As this was a state of liberty, in which the soul could attach itself to either good or evil; if evil predominated, it was after death obliged to retrace its former transmigrations from a point in the animal creation equal to its turpitude, and it again and again became man till it was attached to good. Above humanity, though it might again animate the body of man, it was incapable of relapse; but continued progressively rising to a degree of goodness and happiness, inferior only to the Deity.

It is remarkable that many singular points of coincidence have been discovered in comparing the religious system of the Hindoos with that of the ancient Britons; and in the languages of these two people some striking similarities occur in those proverbs and forms of expression which are derived from national customs and religious ceremonies.

(*o*) This account of the druids, like some of the preceding paragraphs, is borrowed from Cæsar's description of the Gauls.

omitted. The druids esteemed nothing more sacred than the mistletoe, and the tree on which it grew, if an oak. They particularly delighted in groves of oaks (*p*), and performed no sacred rite without branches of that tree, and hence seem to have derived their name of druids, *Δρυιδες*. Whatever grew on an oak was considered as sent from Heaven, and as a sign that the tree was chosen by God himself. The mistletoe was difficult to be found, and when discovered was gathered with religious ceremonies, particularly at the sixth day of the moon (from which period they dated their months and years, and their cycle of thirty years), because the moon was supposed to possess extraordinary powers when she had not completed her second quarter. The mistletoe was called in their language *all heal* (*q*). The sacrifice and the feast being duly prepared under the tree, they led thither two white bulls, whose horns were then bound for the first time (*r*). The priest, clothed in a white vestment, ascending the tree, cut off the mistletoe with a golden bill, and received it in a white cloth. They then slew the victims, invoking the favour of the Deity on their offering. They conceived that the mistletoe cured sterility in animals; and considered it as a specific against all poisons. So great was

(*p*) Gen. ch. xxi. ver. 33.

(*q*) This remark is erroneous. The term *holbiaç*, *all heal*, is applied to the plant which bears the same name in English. The mistletoe is called in Welsh by the several appellations, Gurgon, Uçelvan, Prenawyn, Uçelwydd.

(*r*) As the plough was fastened to the horns of the beasts, this expression signifies that the animal had never been employed in labour.

It is a singular coincidence of circumstances that bulls perfectly white were sacrificed by the Egyptians to Apis. When such an animal was found unblemished, and without a single black hair, the priest tied a fillet about his horns, and sealed it with the signet of his ring; it being a capital crime to sacrifice one of these animals except it was thus marked.—*Herodotus*.



the superstition generally prevailing among nations with respect to frivolous objects.

12. The doctrine of the druids is said to have been first invented in Britain, and from thence carried into Gaul; on which account Pliny says (in his thirtieth book), "But why should I commemorate these things with regard to an art which has passed over the sea, and reached the bounds of nature? Britain even at this time celebrates it with so many wonderful ceremonies, that she seems to have taught it to the Persians." Julius Cæsar affirms the same in his Commentaries: "And now those persons who wish to acquire a more extensive knowledge of such things, repair to Britain for information."

13. At a certain time of the year the druids retired to a consecrated grove in the island of Mona, whither all persons among whom controversies had arisen, repaired for the decision of their disputes.

Bards.

14. Besides the druids, there were among the Gauls and Britons poets called bards (*s*), who sung in heroic measures the deeds of the gods and heroes, accompanied with the sweet notes of the lyre.

15. Concerning the druids and bards, I shall conclude this chapter in the words of Lucan:—

"You too, ye bards! whom sacred raptures fire,  
To chant your heroes to your country's lyre;  
Who consecrate, in your immortal strain,  
Brave patriot souls, in righteous battle slain,  
Securely now the tuneful task renew,  
And noblest themes in deathless songs pursue.

(*s*) According to the Welsh antiquaries, these distinctions are erroneous. The druidical, or rather bardic, system consisted of three classes: the bard proper, whose province was philosophy and poetry; the druid, or minister of religion; and the ovate, or mechanic and artist. For a curious account of the bardic system and institutions, the reader is referred to the Introduction to Owen's Translations of the Elegies of Llywarch Hên.

The druids now, while arms are heard no more,  
 Old mysteries and barbarous rites restore,  
 A tribe who singular religion love,  
 And haunt the lonely coverts of the grove.  
 To these, and these of all mankind alone,  
 The gods are sure revealed or sure unknown.  
 If dying mortals' doom they sing aright,  
 No ghosts descend to dwell in dreadful night;  
 No parting souls to grisly Pluto go,  
 Nor seek the dreary silent shades below;  
 But forth they fly immortal in their kind,  
 And other bodies in new worlds they find:  
 Thus life for ever runs its endless race,  
 And like a line death but divides the space,  
 A stop which can but for a moment last,  
 A point between the future and the past.  
 Thrice happy they beneath their northern skies,  
 Who that worst fear—the fear of death—despise;  
 Hence they no cares for this frail being feel,  
 But rush undaunted on the pointed steel;  
 Provoke approaching fate, and bravely scorn  
 To spare that life which must so soon return."

*Rowe's Lucan, book i.*

## CHAPTER V.

1. THIS island is rich in corn and wood, is well adapted for the maintenance of flocks and cattle, and in some places produces vines. It also abounds with marine and land birds, and contains copious springs, and numerous rivers, stored with fish, and plentifully supplied with salmon and eels.

2. Sea-cows, or seals (*t*), and dolphins are caught, and whales, of which mention is made by the satirist:

"Quanto delphinis balæna Britannica major."

(*t*) We do not find that Pennant mentions, among the amphibious animals, the *Vituli Marini*, by which Richard probably meant seals.



3. There are besides several sorts of shellfish, among which are muscles, containing pearls often of the best kind, and of every colour: that is, red, purple, violet, green (*prasini*), but principally white, as we find in the venerable Bede's Ecclesiastical History.

4. Shells(*u*) are still more abundant, from which is prepared a scarlet dye of the most beautiful hue, which never fades from the effect of the sun or rain, but becomes finer as it grows older.

5. In Britain are salt and warm springs, from which are formed hot baths, suited to all ages, with distinct places for the two sexes(*v*).

6. White lead is found in the midland regions, and iron in the maritime, but in small quantities gold and silver are also produced, but brass is imported. Jet of the purest quality abounds; it is of a shining black, and highly inflammable(*w*). When burnt, it drives away serpents, and when warmed by friction attracts bodies like amber.

7. Britain being situated almost under the north pole, the nights are so light in summer, that it is often doubtful whether the evening or morning twilight prevails; because the sun, in returning to the east, does not long remain below the horizon. Hence, also, according to Cleomenes, the longest day in summer, and the longest night in winter, when the sun declines towards the south, is eighteen hours; and the shortest night in summer,

(*u*) Richard calls these shells *Cochleæ*, or snails, though he probably alludes to the species styled by naturalists *Murea*, which contained the famous Tyrian purple, so much valued by the ancients. Yet, whatever our island may have formerly produced, we discern no traces, in later ages, of any testaceous animal yielding a purple or scarlet dye.

(*v*) Richard here doubtless principally alludes to Bath, the *Aquæ Solis* of the ancients.

(*w*) This substance appears to have been wrought into ornaments for the person. In the barrows, jet heads of a long elliptical form were found, together with others of amber, and a coarse blue glass.

and day in winter, is six hours. In the same manner as in Armenia, Macedon, Italy, and the regions under the same parallel, the longest day is fifteen, and the shortest nine hours.

8. But I have given a sufficient account of Britain and the Britons in general. I shall now descend to particulars; and, in the succeeding pages, shall describe the state and revolutions of the different nations who inhabited this island, the cities which ennobled it, with other particulars, and their condition under the Roman dominion.

## CHAPTER VI.

1. BRITAIN, according to the most accurate and authentic accounts of the ancients, was divided into seven parts, six of which were at different times subjected to the Roman empire, and the seventh held by the uncivilized Caledonians. Divisions.

2. These divisions were called Britannia Prima, Secunda, Flavia, Maxima, Valentia, and Vespasiana, which last did not long remain under the power of the Romans. Britannia Prima is separated by the river Thamesis from Flavia, and by the sea (*x*) from Britannia Secunda. Flavia begins from the German Ocean, is bounded by the Thamesis (*y*), by the Sabrina (*z*) on the side of the Silures and Ordovices, and trends toward the north and the region of the Brigantes (*a*). Maxima, beginning at the extreme boundary of Flavia, reaches

(*x*) Rather by the æstuary of the Severn.

(*y*) Thames.

(*z*) Severn.

(*a*) Here some word is evidently omitted in the original. We would supply it by comparing this description with that of Britannia Secunda in the second section, and read "*Sabrina et Deva*," &c., "by the Severn and the Dee from the Silures and Ordovices."



to the wall (*b*) which traverses the whole island, and faces the north. Valentia occupies the whole space between this wall and that built by the emperor Antoninus Pius, from the æstuary of the Bdora (*c*) to that of the Clydda (*d*). Vespasiana stretches from the æstuary of the Bdora to the city of Alcuith (*e*), from whence a line drawn to the mouth of the Varar (*f*) shows the boundary. Britannia Secunda faces the Irish Sea to the north and west. But sufficient notice has been taken of the provinces.

3. Before we proceed to a more minute description, let us touch upon the form of government. In remote times all Britain was divided among petty princes and states, some of whom are said to have existed after the country was occupied by the Romans; though under the Roman domination they retained scarcely the shadow of regal authority. A legate being appointed by the emperor over the conquered countries, Britain became a proconsular province. This form of government continued several ages, although in the mean time the island underwent many divisions, first into the Upper and Lower districts, and then, as we have before shown, into seven parts. It afterwards became the imperial residence of Carausius and those whom he admitted to a share of his power. Constantine the Great, the glory and defence of Christianity, is supposed to have raised Maxima and Valentia to consular provinces, and Prima, Secunda, and Flavia, to præsidials. But over the whole island was appointed a deputy governor, under the authority of the prætorian prefect of Gaul. Besides whom, an ancient volume, written about that period, mentions a person of great dignity, by the title of *comes* or count of the Britons, another as count of the Saxon coast, and a third as leader or duke of Britain; with

(*b*) The wall or vallum erected by Severus between the Solway Frith and the mouth of the Tyne.

(*c*) Bodora and Bodotria, Frith of Forth.

(*d*) Clotta. Clyde. (*e*) Dumbarton. (*f*) Murray Frith.

many others, who, although possessed of great offices, must be passed over in silence, for want of certain information (*g*).

4. I now commence my long journey, to examine minutely the whole island and its particular parts, and shall follow the footsteps of the best authors. I begin with the extreme part of the first province, whose coasts are opposite Gaul. This province contains three celebrated and powerful states, namely, Cantium, Belgium, and Damnonium, each of which in particular I shall carefully examine.

First of Cantium.

5. Cantium (*h*), situated at the eastern extremity of <sup>Kent.</sup> Britannia Prima, was inhabited by the Cantii, and contains the cities of Durobrobis (*i*) and Cantiopolis (*k*), which was the metropolis, and the burial-place of St. Augustin, the apostle of the English; Dubræ (*l*), Lemanus (*m*), and Regulbium (*n*), garrisoned by the Romans; also their primary station Rhutupis (*o*), which was colonized and became the metropolis, and where a haven was formed capable of containing the Roman fleet which commanded the North Sea. This city was of such celebrity that it gave the name of Rhutupine to the neighbouring shores; of which Lucan,

“Aut vaga cum Thetis Rhutupinaque littora fervent.”

From hence oysters of a large size and superior flavour were sent to Rome, as Juvenal observes,

“————— Circaeis nata forent, an  
Lucrinum ad saxum, RHUTUPINOVE edita fundo  
Ostrea, callebat primo deprendere morsu.”

(*g*) These remarks seem to have been drawn from the *Notitia Imperii*; and consequently refer to a late period of the empire.

(*h*) Cantium contained the present county of Kent, as far as the Rother, except a small district in which Holwood Hill is situated, and which belonged to the Rhem.

(*i*) Rochester.

(*k*) Canterbury.

(*l*) Dover.

(*m*) Situated on the Lymne.

(*n*) Reculver.

(*o*) Richborough.



It was the station of the second Augustan legion, under the count of the Saxon coast, a person of high distinction.

6. The kingdom of Cantium is watered by many rivers. The principal are Madus (*p*), Sturius (*q*), Dubris (*r*), and Lemanus (*s*), which last separates the Cantii from the Bibroci.

7. Among the three principal promontories of Britain, that which derives its name from Cantium (*t*) is most distinguished. There the ocean, being confined in an angle, according to the tradition of the ancients, gradually forced its way, and formed the strait which renders Britain an island.

8. The vast forest called by some the Anderidan, and by others the Caledonian, stretches from Cantium an hundred and fifty miles, through the countries of the Bibroci and the Segontiaci, to the confines of the Hedui. It is thus mentioned by the poet Lucan:—

“Unde Caledoniis fallit turbata Britannos.”

Bibrocum.

9. The Bibroci (*u*) were situated next to the Cantii, and, as some imagine, were subject to them. They were also called Rhemi, and are not unknown in record. They inhabited Bibrocum (*v*), Regentium (*w*), and Noviomagus (*x*), which was their metropolis. The Romans held Anderida (*y*).

Attrebates.

10. On their confines, and bordering on the Thames, dwelt the Attrebates (*z*), whose primary city was Calleba (*a*).

(*p*) The Medway.

(*q*) The Stour.

(*r*) A rivulet at Dover.

(*s*) The Rother.

(*t*) The North Foreland.

(*u*) The Bibroci, Rhemi, or Regni, inhabited part of Hants, and of Berks, Sussex, Surrey, and a small portion of Kent.

(*v*) Uncertain. Stukeley calls it Bibrox, Bibrax, or the Bibracte of the Itinerary.

(*w*) Chichester.

(*x*) Holwood Hill.

(*y*) Pevensey.

(*z*) Part of Hants, and Berks.

(*a*) Silchester. For the proofs that this place was the site of Calleva, see the Commentary on the Itinerary.

11. Below them, nearer the river Kunetius (*b*), lived Segontiaci. the Segontiaci (*c*), whose chief city was Vindonum (*d*).

12. Below, towards the ocean, and bordering on the Belgæ. Bibroci, lived the Belgæ (*e*), whose chief cities were Clausentum (*f*), now called Southampton; Portus Magnus (*g*); Venta (*h*), a noble city situated upon the river Antona. Sorbiodunum (*i*) was garrisoned by the Romans. All the Belgæ are Allobroges, or foreigners, and derived their origin from the Belgæ and Celts. The latter, not many ages before the arrival of Cæsar, quitted their native country, Gaul, which was conquered by the Romans and Germans, and passed over to this island: the former, after crossing the Rhine, and occupying the conquered country, likewise sent out colonies, of which Cæsar has spoken more at large (*j*).

13. All the regions south of the Thamesis (*k*) were, according to ancient records, occupied by the warlike nation of the Senones. These people, under the guidance of their renowned king Brennus, penetrated through Gaul, forced a passage over the Alps, hitherto deemed impracticable, and would have razed proud Rome, had not the Fates, which seemed like to carry the Republic in their bosom, till it reached its destined height of glory, averted the threatened calamity. By the cackle of a goose Manlius was warned of the danger, and hurled the barbarians from the Capitol, in their midnight attack. The same protecting influence after-

(*b*) Kennet.

(*c*) Part of Hants, and Berks.

(*d*) Probably Egbury Camp.

(*e*) The Belgæ occupied those parts of Hants and Wilts not held by the Segontiaci.

(*f*) This is an error: the ancient Clausentum was at Bittern, on the Itchin, opposite Northam.

(*g*) Portchester.

(*h*) Winchester.

(*i*) Old Sarum.

(*j*) This passage as printed in the original is very obscure; but the meaning is supplied by Cæsar, from whom it is taken, and a subsequent page where Richard mentions the same fact.—*Vide the Chronology in b. 2. c. i. sect. 9.*

(*k*) Thames.



wards sent Camillus to his assistance, who, by assailing them in the rear, quenched the conflagration which they had kindled, in Senonic blood, and preserved the city from impending destruction. In consequence of this vast expedition, the land of the Senones (*l*), being left without inhabitants, and full of spoils, was occupied by the above-mentioned Belgæ.

Hedui.

14. Near the Sabrina and below the Thamesis lived the Hedui (*m*), whose principal cities were Ischalis (*n*) and Avalonia (*o*). The Baths (*p*), which were also called Aquæ Solis, were made the seat of a colony, and became the perpetual residence of the Romans who possessed this part of Britain. This was a celebrated city, situated upon the river Abona, remarkable for its hot springs, which were formed into baths at a great expense. Apollo and Minerva (*q*) were the tutelary deities, in whose temples the perpetual fire never fell into ashes, but as it wasted away turned into globes of stone.

Morini.

15. Below the Hedui are situated the Durotriges, who are sometimes called Morini. Their metropolis was Durinum (*r*), and their territory extended to the promontory Vindelia (*s*). In their country the land is gradually contracted, and seems to form an immense arm which repels the waves of the ocean.

16. In this arm was the region of the Cimbri (*t*), whose country was divided from that of the Hedui by the river

(*l*) There was a tribe of Celts called Senones seated on the banks of the Seine as late as the time of Cæsar, and this was one of the tribes who marched with Brennus against Rome. But we cannot discover from whence Richard drew his information that these Senones originally emigrated from Britain, leaving their country to be occupied by the Belgæ.

(*m*) Nearly all Somersetshire.

(*n*) Ilchester.

(*o*) Glastonbury.

(*p*) Bath.

(*q*) This is drawn from Solinus, who speaks of Britain in general. We know not on what authority it was applied by Richard to Bath.

(*r*) Maiden Castle, near Dorchester.

(*s*) Isle of Portland.

(*t*) Part of Somerset and Devon.

Uxella (*u*). It is not ascertained whether the Cimbri <sup>Cimbri.</sup> gave to Wales its modern name, or whether their origin is more remote. Their chief cities were Termolus (*v*) and Artavia (*w*). From hence, according to the ancients, are seen the pillars of Hercules, and the island Herculea (*x*) not far distant. From the Uxella a chain of mountains called Ocrinum extends to the promontory known by the same name.

17. Beyond the Cimbri the Carnabii inhabited the <sup>Carnabii.</sup> extreme angle of the island (*y*), from whom this district probably obtained its present name of Carnubia (Cornwall). Their chief cities were Musidum (*z*) and Halangium (*a*). But as the Romans never frequented these almost desert and uncultivated parts of Britain, their cities seem to have been of little consequence, and were therefore neglected by historians; though geographers mention the promontories Bolerium and Antives-tæum (*b*).

18. Near the above-mentioned people on the sea <sup>Damnonii.</sup> coast towards the south, and bordering on the Belgæ Allobroges, lived the Damnonii, the most powerful people of those parts; on which account Ptolemy assigns to them all the country extending into the sea like an arm (*c*). Their cities were Uxella (*d*), Tamara (*e*), Voluba (*f*), Cenia (*g*), and Isca (*h*), the mother of all, situated upon the Isca. Their chief rivers were the Isca (*i*), Durius (*j*), Tamarus (*k*), and Cenius (*l*).

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| ( <i>u</i> ) The Parret.                                    | ( <i>v</i> ) Uncertain,—probably in Devonshire. |
| ( <i>w</i> ) Ibid.  | ( <i>x</i> ) Lundy Island.                      |
| ( <i>y</i> ) Part of Cornwall.                              | ( <i>z</i> ) Near Stratton.                     |
| ( <i>a</i> ) Carnbre.                                       | ( <i>b</i> ) Land's End, and Lizard Point.      |
| ( <i>c</i> ) Cornwall, Devon, Dorset, and part of Somerset. |   |
| ( <i>d</i> ) Probably near Bridgewater.                     | ( <i>e</i> ) On the Tamar.                      |
| ( <i>f</i> ) On the Fowey.                                  | ( <i>g</i> ) On the Fal.                        |
| ( <i>h</i> ) Exeter.  | ( <i>i</i> ) Ex.                                |
| ( <i>j</i> ) The Dart.                                      | ( <i>k</i> ) Tamar.                             |
| ( <i>l</i> ) The Fal.                                       |   |



Their coasts are distinguished by three promontories, which will be hereafter mentioned. This region was much frequented by the Phœnicians, Grecians, and Gallic merchants, for the metals with which it abounded, particularly for its tin. Proofs of this may be drawn from the names of the above-mentioned promontories, namely Hellenis (*m*), Ocrinum (*n*), and Κριῦ μέτωπον (*o*), as well as the numerous appellations of cities, which show a Grecian or Phœnician derivation.

Sygdiles.

19. Beyond this arm are the isles called Sygdiles (*p*), which are also denominated Æstromenides and Cassiterides.

20. It is affirmed that the emperor Vespasian fought thirty battles with the united force of the Damnonii and Belgæ. The ten different tribes who inhabited the south banks of the Thames and Severn being gradually subdued, their country was formed into the province of Britannia Prima, so called because it was the first fruit of victory obtained by the Romans.

21. Next in order is Britannia Secunda, which is divided from Britannia Prima by the countries already mentioned, and from the Flavian province by the Sabrina (*q*) and the Deva (*r*); and the remaining parts are bounded by the internal sea. This was the renowned region of the Silures (*s*), inhabited by three powerful tribes.

Silures.

(*m*) Probably Berry Head.

(*n*) Lizard Point.

(*o*) Ram Head.

(*p*) Scilly Isles.

(*q*) Severn.

(*r*) Dee.

(*s*) The Silures, with their two dependent tribes, the Dimeciæ and the Ordovices, possessed all the country to the west of the Severn and the Dee, together with the island of Anglesey.

“Of these territories the Dimeciæ had the counties of Pembroke, Cardigan, and Caermarthen; while the Silures possessed all the rest of South Wales, as well as such parts of England as lay to the west of the Severn and to the South of the Teme: while the Ordovices occupied all North Wales, as well as all the country to the north of the Teme, and to the west of the Severn and the Dee, except a small tract to the West of Bangor and Penmorvay, which

Among these were particularly distinguished the Silures Proper, whom the turbid æstuary of the Severn divides from the country we have just described. These people, according to Solinus, still retain their ancient manners, have neither markets nor money, but barter their commodities, regarding rather utility than price. They worship the gods, and both men and women are supposed to foretell future events.

22. The chief cities of the Silures were, Sariconium (*t*), Magna (*u*), Gobaneum (*v*), and Venta (*w*) their capital. A Roman colony possessed the city built on the Isca (*x*), and called after that name, for many years the station of the second or Augustan legion, until it was transferred to the Valentian province, and Rhutupis (*y*). This was the primary station of the Romans in Britannia Secunda.

23. The country of the Silures was long powerful, particularly under Caractacus, who during nine years withstood the Roman arms, and frequently triumphed over them, until he was defeated by Ostorius, as he was preparing to attack the Romans. Caractacus, however, escaped from the battle, and in applying for assistance to the neighbouring chieftains was delivered up to the Romans, by the artifices of a Roman matron, Carthismandua, who had married Venutius, chief of Brigantia. After this defeat the Silures bravely defended their country till it was overrun by Varonius, and being finally conquered by Frontinus, it was reduced into a Roman province under the name of Britannia Secunda.

24. Two other tribes were subject to the Silures. First the Ordovices, who inhabited the north towards Ordovices.

together with the isle of Anglesey belonged to their subordinate clan the Cangani."

(*t*) Rose or Berry Hill in Weston.

(*u*) Kentchester.

(*v*) Abergavenny.

(*w*) Caerwent.

(*x*) Caerleon, on Usk.

(*y*) Richborough in Kent.



Dimetæ.

the isle of Mona (*z*) ; and secondly the Dimeciæ, who occupied the west, where the promontory Octorupium (*a*) is situated, and from whence is a passage of thirty miles (*b*) to Ireland. The cities of the Dimeciæ were Menapia (*c*) and Muridunum (*d*) the metropolis. The Romans seized upon Lovantium (*e*) as their station. Beyond these, and the borders of the Silures, were the Ordovices, whose cities were Mediolanum (*f*) and Brannogenium (*g*). The Sabrina, which rises in their mountains, is justly reckoned one of the three largest rivers of Britain, the Thamesis (Thames) and the Tавus (Tay) being the other two. The name of the Ordovices is first distinguished in history on account of the revenge which they took for the captivity of their renowned chief. Hence they continually harassed the Roman army, and would have succeeded in annihilating their power, had not Agricola turned hither his victorious arms, subdued the whole nation, and put the greater part to the sword.

Cangiani.

25. The territory situated north of the Ordovices, and washed by the ocean, was formerly under their dominion. These parts were certainly inhabited by the Cangiani, whose chief city was Segontium (*h*), near the Cangian promontory (*i*), on the Minevian shore, opposite Mona (*j*), an island long distinguished as the residence of the druids. This island contained many towns, though it was scarcely sixty miles in circuit ; and, as Pliny asserts, is distant from the colony Camalodunum two hundred miles. The rivers of the Cangiani were Tosibus (*k*), called also Canovius, and the Deva (*l*), which was their boundary. In this region is the stupendous mountain

(*z*) Anglesey.(*b*) XXX milliarium.(*d*) Caermarthen.(*f*) On the bank of the Tanat.(*h*) Caer Segont.(*j*) Anglesey.(*a*) St. David's Head.(*c*) St. David's.(*e*) Llanio Issau on the Teivi.(*g*) Near Lentwardine.(*i*) Brach y Pwll Point.(*k*) The Conway.(*l*) Dee.

Eriri (*m*). Ordovicia, together with the regions of the Cangiani and Carnabii, unless report deceives me, constituted a province called Genania, under the reign of the emperors subsequent to Trajan.

26. I now proceed to the Flavian province; but for want of authentic documents am unable to ascertain, whether it derived its name from Flavia Julia Helena, mother of Constantine the Great, who was born in these parts, or from the Flavian family.

27. Towards the river Deva were situated in the first place the Carnabii (*n*). Their principal places were Benonæ (*o*), Etocetum (*p*), and Banchorium (*q*), the last the most celebrated monastery in the whole island, which being overthrown in the dispute with Augustin, was never afterwards restored; and the mother of the rest, Uriconium (*r*), esteemed one of the largest cities in Britain. In the extreme angle of this country, near the Deva, was the Roman colony Deva (*s*), the work of the twentieth legion, which was called Victrix, and was formerly the defence of the region. This place is supposed to be what is now termed West Chester.

28. Below these people stretched the kingdom, or rather the republic, of the Cassii, called by Ptolemy Catieuchlani, which arose from the union of two nations. Those nearest the Sabrina were called the Dobuni, or, according to the annals of Dio, the Boduni (*t*). In their

(*m*) Snowdon.

(*n*) The territory of the Carnabii was bounded on the north by the Mersey, west by the Severn, east by part of the Watling Street, and to the south by Staffordshire.

(*o*) Benonis; High Cross.

(*p*) Wall.

(*q*) Banchor.

(*r*) Wroxeter.

(*s*) Chester.

(*t*) The *Dobuni* were bounded on the west by the Severn, on the south by the Thames, on the east by the Charwell, and on the north by the Carnabii.

The *Cassii*, bounded on the south by the Thames, on the west by the Dobuni, on the east by the Trent, and on the north by the Iceni.



country the Thames rises, and, proceeding through the territories of the Hedui, Attrebates, Cassii, Bibroci, Trinobantes, and Cantii, after a long course flows into the German Ocean. The cities of the Dobuni were Salinæ (*u*), Branogena (*v*) on the left of the Sabrina (Severn), Alauna (*w*), and the most venerable of all, Corinium (*x*), a famous city supposed to have been built by Vespasian. But Glevum (*y*), situated in the extreme part of the kingdom, towards the territory of the Silures, was occupied by a Roman colony, which, according to the writers of those times, was introduced by Claudius Cæsar. Adjoining to these were the Cassii, whose chief cities were Forum Dianæ (*z*) and Verulamium (*a*). But when the last was raised by the Romans to the municipal rank, it obtained the pre-eminence over the other cities. St. Alban the martyr was here born. This city was involved in the ruin of Camalodunum (*b*), and Londinium (*c*) in the insurrection of Bonduica, which is related by Tacitus. The Cassii were conspicuous above the other nations of the island; and Cæsar in his second invasion had the severest conflicts with their renowned chief Cassibellinus, to whom many people were tributary; and was repulsed by the Cassii in league with the Silures; to which Lucan alludes:—“*Territa quæsitis ostendit terga Britannis.*” But on the coming of Claudius, they, with the neighbouring people, were subdued, and their country reduced to a Roman province, first called Cæsariensis, and afterwards Flavia.

Trinobantes. 29. Near the Cassii, where the river Thamesis approaches the ocean, was the region of the Trino-

(*u*) Droitwich.

(*v*) Near Lentwardine.

(*w*) Alcester.

(*x*) Cirencester in Gloucestershire.

(*y*) Gloucester.

(*z*) Dunstable.

(*a*) Old St. Alban's.

(*b*) Colchester.

(*c*) London.

bantes (*d*), who not only entered into alliance with the Romans, but resigned to them Londinium their metropolis, and Camalodunum situated near the sea, for the purpose of establishing colonies. In this city was supposed to be born Flavia Julia Helena, the pious wife of Constantine Chlorus and mother of Constantine the Great, who was descended from the blood of the British kings. It was the chief colony of the Romans in Britain, and distinguished by a temple of Claudius, an image of Victory, with many ornaments (*e*). But Londinium was and ever will be a city of great eminence. It was first named Trinovantum, then Londinium, afterwards Augusta, and now again Londona. According to the chronicles it is more ancient than Rome. It is situated upon the banks of the Thamesis, and is the great emporium of many nations trading by land or sea. This city was surrounded with a wall by the empress Helena, the discoverer of the Holy Cross; and, if reliance may be placed on tradition, which is not always erroneous, was called Augusta, as Britain was distinguished by the name of the Roman Island.

30. The boundary of this people towards the north was the river Surius (*f*), beyond which lived the Iceni, a famous people divided into two tribes. The first of these, the Cenomanni, dwelt to the north towards the Trinobantes and Cassii, and bordered on the ocean towards the east. Their cities were Durnomagus (*g*), and their metropolis Venta (*h*). Camboricum (*i*) was a Roman colony. A tongue of land stretching into the sea towards the east was called Flavia Extrema (*k*). Their most remarkable

(*d*) It stretched from the Thames to the Stour on the north, and on the west to the Brent and the Ouse.

(*e*) This temple with its ornaments is mentioned in Tacitus.

(*f*) Sturius, the Stour.

(*g*) Castor near Chesterton.

(*h*) Castor near Norwich.

(*i*) Cambridge.

(*k*) Part of the Suffolk coast.



rivers are the Garion (*l*), the Surlus (*m*), and the Aufona (*n*) which falls into the bay of Metaris (*o*). Beyond the Aufona, bordering on the Carnabii, Brigantes, and the ocean, lived the Coitani (*p*), in a tract of country overspread with woods, which, like all the woods of Britain, was called Caledonia (*q*). This is mentioned by the historian Florus (*r*). The chief city of the Coitani was Ragæ (*s*). Besides this was Lindum (*t*), a Roman colony, on the eastern extremity of the province. The river Trivonia (*u*) divides the whole country into two parts. The nation of the Iceni, being of a warlike character, neglected husbandry as well as the civil arts; they voluntarily joined the Romans; but, revolting, and exciting others to follow their example, were first subdued by Ostorius. A few years afterwards, Præsutagus their king, at his decease, made Cæsar and his descendants his heirs. But the Romans, abusing the friendship of these people and giving themselves up to every species of debauchery, excited their resentment, and the Iceni with their allies, under the warlike Bonduica, widow of Præsutagus, destroyed their colonies, and massacred eighty thousand Roman citizens. They were afterwards reduced by the legate Suetonius, a man highly esteemed for prudence.

31. On the northern part of this region is the river Abus (*v*), which falls into the ocean, and was one of the boundaries of the province Maxima, as Seteja (*w*) was the other. This province was also called the kingdom of Bri-

(*l*) The Yar.

(*m*) The Stour.

(*n*) The Nen.

(*o*) Boston Deep.

(*p*) In the map these people are called the Coritani. They seem to have inhabited Lincoln, Leicester, and Nottingham.

(*q*) Calyddon means coverts or thickets.

(*r*) B. iii. ch. 10, where, speaking of Cæsar, he says, "Caledonias sequutus in sylvas."

(*s*) Leicester.

(*t*) Lincoln.

(*u*) Trent.

(*v*) The Humber.

(*w*) The Mersey.

gantia, because it comprehended the region of that name inhabited by three nations. At the eastern point (*x*), where the promontories of Oxellum (*y*) and of the Brigantes (*z*) stretch into the sea, lived the Parisii, whose cities were Petuaria (*a*) and Portus Felix (*b*). Parisii.

32. Above, but on the side of the Parisii, are the proper Brigantes (*c*), a numerous people who once gave law to the whole province. Brigantes. Their towns were Epiacum (*d*), Vinovium (*e*), Cambodunum (*f*), Cataracton (*g*), Galacum (*h*), Olicana (*i*), and the chief city Isurium (*j*). Eboracum (*k*), on the Urus (*l*), was the metropolis, first a colony of the Romans, called Sexta, from being the station of the sixth legion, termed the Victorious, and afterwards distinguished by the presence of many emperors, and raised to the privileges of a municipal city.

33. This province is divided into two equal parts by a chain of mountains called the Pennine Alps, which rising on the confines of the Iceni and Carnabii, near the river Trivona (*m*), extend towards the north in a continued series of fifty miles.

34. The people to the west of this chain (*n*) are the

(*x*) Part of the East Rid. of York.

(*y*) Spurn Head.

(*z*) Flamborough Head.

(*a*) Broughton on Humber.

(*b*) Near Bridlington Bay.

(*c*) Their territory stretched from the bounds of the Parisii northward to the Tine, and from the Humber and Don to the mountains of Lancashire, Westmoreland and Cumberland.

(*d*) Lanchester.

(*e*) Binchester.

(*f*) Slack.

(*g*) Catteric.

(*h*) Galgacum, uncertain.

(*i*) Ilkley.

(*j*) Aldborough.

(*k*) York.

(*l*) Probably from the Ure, which receives the name of Ouse above York, on its junction with the Nid.

(*m*) Trent.

(*n*) To the Voluntii belonged the western part of Lancashire; and to the Sistuntii, the west of Westmoreland and Cumberland as far as the wall.

(*o*) Hence, in § 31, they are called one people.



Voluntii and  
Sistuntii.

Voluntii and Sistuntii, who are united in a close confederacy (*o*). Their cities are Rerigonium (*p*), Coccium (*q*), and Lugubalium (*r*). The two last were occupied by Roman garrisons.

35. The northern frontier of this province was protected by a wall (*s*) of stupendous magnitude built by the

(*p*) Ribchester.      (*q*) Blackrode.      (*r*) Carlisle.

(*s*) The wall of Severus. The exact site of the barrier erected by Severus against the northern tribes, furnished matter of dispute to many of our antiquaries. The researches of others, particularly Horsley, have, however, set this question at rest. From their information, joined to the scanty evidence of history, it has been proved that three walls or ramparts were erected by the Romans at different times, to secure the northern frontier of their dominions in Britain.

The first was a rampart of earth, from the Solway Frith to the Tine, raised by Hadrian about the year 120; but its form and construction have not been satisfactorily ascertained. It was, however, evidently nothing more than a line intended to obstruct the passage of an enemy between the stations which constituted the real defences of the frontier.

The second was raised by Lollius Urbicus under the reign of Antoninus Pius, about 140, between the Friths of Forth and Clyde. This was likewise of earth, though perhaps faced with stone, and, like that of Hadrian, seems to have been intended as a line connecting the chain of stations, which formed a new barrier on the advance of the Roman arms. In the course of both these was a military road communicating from station to station.

The last and most important is that begun by Severus, after his expedition against the Caledonians, about 208. It runs nearly over the same ground as that of Hadrian; but is a complete and well combined system of fortification. From an examination of its remains it appears to have been built of stone, fifteen feet high and nine thick. It had a parapet and ditch, a military road, and was defended by 18 greater stations placed at intervals of three to six miles; 83 castles at intervals of 6 to 8 furlongs, and, as it is imagined, a considerable number of turrets placed at shorter distances.

Either from superior sagacity or superior information, Richard clearly distinguishes these three walls, which so much puzzled later writers, though it must be confessed that in other places he has suffered himself to be led into some errors in regard to their si-



Romans across the Isthmus, eighty miles in length, twelve feet high and (*nine*) thick, strengthened with towers.

36. We collect from history, that these people were first attacked by the emperor Claudius, then overrun by the legate Ostorius, and finally defeated by Cerealis. By their voluntary submission to Agricola they obtained peace. The actions and unheard-of perfidy of their queen have disgraced their name in history. These people were descended from those powerful nations, who in search of new habitations quitted their country, which was situated between the Danube, the Alps, and the Rhone (*t*). Some of them afterwards emigrated into Ireland, as appears from authentic documents.

37. Further north were situated those powerful nations, who in former times were known under the name of Maetæ, and from whom that fratricide Bassianus (*u*), <sup>Maetæ.</sup> after the death of his father, basely purchased peace. They possessed Ottadinia towards the east, Gadenia, Selgovia, Novantia, and further north Damnia.

38. Nearest the wall dwelt the Gadeni (*v*), <sup>Gadeni.</sup> whose metropolis was Curia (*w*). The Ottadini (*x*) were situated nearer the sea. Their chief city was Bremenium (*y*),

tuation, and the persons by whom they were erected.—See b. ii. ch. 1, sect. 22, 27, 36, 37; ch. 2, sect. 17, 23. For a detailed account of these works the reader is referred to *Horsley's Britannia Romana*; *Warburton's Account of the Roman Wall*; *Hutchinson's Northumberland*; *Roy's Military Antiquities*; *Hutton's Account of the Roman Wall*.

(*t*) These were the Helvetii, whose emigration is mentioned in *Cæs. Comm. de Bell. Gall. lib. i*. We have not discovered from what authority Richard draws his account of their emigration to Ireland.

(*u*) Caracalla.

(*v*) The Gadeni appear to have occupied the midland parts from the wall, probably as far as the Forth.

(*w*) Uncertain.

(*x*) The Ottadini stretched along the eastern coast, from the wall as far as the Frith of Forth, and were bounded on the west by the Gadeni.

(*y*) Ribchester.



and their rivers Tueda (*y*), Alauna (*z*), and the two Tinas (*a*), which ran within the wall.

Selgovæ.

39. The Selgovæ (*b*) inhabited the country to the west. Their cities were Corbantorigum (*c*), Uxellum (*d*), and Trimontium (*e*), which, according to ancient documents, was a long time occupied by a Roman garrison. The principal rivers of this region were Novius (*f*), Deva (*g*), and partly the Ituna (*h*).

Novantes.

40. The Novantes (*i*) dwell beyond the Deva, in the extreme part of the island, near the sea, and opposite Ireland. In their country was the famous Novantum Chersonesus (*j*), distant twenty-eight miles from Ireland, and esteemed by the ancients the most northern promontory of Britain (*k*), though without sufficient reason. Their metropolis was Lucophibia, or Casæ Candidæ (*l*); their rivers Abrasuanus (*m*), Jena (*n*), and Deva (*o*), which was the boundary towards the east.

Damnii.

41. The Damnii (*p*) dwelt to the north of the No-

(*y*) Tweed.

(*z*) The Coquet.

(*a*) The North and South Tine.

(*b*) The Selgovæ appear to have occupied all the shire of Dumfries, and part of Kirkudbright.

(*c*) Drumlanrig, or Kirkudbright.

(*d*) Uncertain.

(*e*) Birrenswork Hill.

(*f*) Nith.

(*g*) The Dee.

(*h*) The Eden.

(*i*) The Novantes held the south-western district of Scotland, from the Dee to the Mull of Galloway; that is, the west of Kirkudbright and Wigtown, and part of the Carrick division of Ayr.

(*j*) Rens of Galloway. It is not, however, more than eighteen miles from the nearest part of Ireland.

(*k*) By an error in the geographical or astronomical observations preserved by Ptolemy, the latitudes north of this point appear to have been mistaken for the longitudes, and consequently this part of Britain is thrown to the east.

(*l*) Wigtown, *Horsley*. Whithern, *Stukeley*, *Roy*.

(*m*) The Luce.

(*n*) Cree, *Roy*.

(*o*) Dee.

(*p*) These people inhabited the principal part of what are called

vantes, the Selgovæ, and the Gadeni, and were separated from them by the chain of the Uxellan mountains (*q*). They were a very powerful people, but lost a considerable portion of their territory when the wall was built, being subdued and spoiled by the Caledonians. Besides which, a Roman garrison occupied Vanduarium (*r*) to defend the wall.

42. In this part, Britain, as if again delighted with the embraces of the sea, becomes narrower than elsewhere, in consequence of the rapid influx of the two æstuaries, Bodotria and Clotta (*s*). Agricola first secured this isthmus with fortifications, and the emperor Antoninus (*t*) erected another wall celebrated in history, which extended nearly five-and-thirty miles, in order to check the incursions of the barbarians. It was repaired, and strengthened with eleven towers, by the general Ætius. These regions probably constituted that province, which, being recovered by the victorious arms of the Romans under Theodosius, was supposed to have been named Valentia, in honour of the family from whom the reigning emperor was descended.

43. Beyond the wall lay the province *Vespasiana*. Vespasiana. This is the Caledonian region so much coveted by the Romans, and so bravely defended by the natives, facts which the Roman historians, generally too silent in regard to such things, have amply detailed. In these districts may be seen the river Tavus (*u*), which appears to separate the country into two parts. There are also found the steep and horrid Grampian hills, which divide the province. In this region was fought that famous

the Lowlands. Their territories beyond the Isthmus evidently stretched as far as the Grampians, consisting of great part of Ayr, all Renfrew and Lanark, a considerable part of Stirling, and perhaps Linlithgow.

(*q*) The Lothers.

(*r*) Paisley, or Renfrew, *Roy*.

(*s*) Friths of Forth and Clyde.

(*t*) See page 120.

(*u*) Tay.



battle between Agricola and Galgacus, which was so decisive in favour of the Romans (*v*). The magnitude of the works at this day displays the power of the Romans, and the ancient mode of castrametation; for, in the place where the battle was fought, certain persons of our order, who passed that way, affirmed that they saw immense camps, and other proofs which corroborated the relation of Tacitus.

Horestii.

44. The nations which were subject to the Romans shall now follow in their order. Beyond the Isthmus, as far as the Tavis, lived the Horestii (*w*). Their cities, which before the building of the wall belonged to the Damnii, were Alauna (*x*), Lindum (*y*), and Victoria (*z*), the last not less glorious in reality than in name. It was built by Agricola on the Tavis, twenty miles above its mouth.

Taixali.

45. Above these, beyond the Tavis, which formed the boundary, lived the Vecturones or Venricones (*a*), whose chief city was Orrea (*b*), and their rivers Æsica (*c*) and Tina (*d*).

46. The Taixali (*e*) inhabited the coast beyond the boundaries of the Vecturones. Their principal city was

(*v*) It may perhaps appear superfluous to refer the antiquary to Roy's masterly Commentary on the campaigns of Agricola in this part of Britain; but it will scarcely be deemed so to observe, that we see few instances in which military and local knowledge are so well applied to the elucidation of antiquities.

(*w*) The Horestii occupied Clackmannan and Kinross, and part of Perth as far the Tay. To them belonged likewise all the country stretching from the Grampians to Loch Lomond.

(*x*) Uncertain.

(*y*) Ardoch.

(*z*) Dealgin Ross.

(*a*) The Vecturones occupied the eastern part of Perth, Forfar, Kincardin, and part of Aberdeen.

(*b*) Bertha, or Old Perth.

(*c*) South Esk.

(*d*) Tine.

(*e*) The Taixali held the eastern coast of Aberdeen, apparently as far as Kinnaird Head.

Devana (*f*), and their rivers the Deva (*g*) and Ituna (*h*). A part of the Grampian hills, which extends like a promontory into the sea, as it were to meet Germany, borrows its name from them (*i*).

47. To the west of these, beyond the Grampian hills, lived the Vacomagi (*j*), who possessed an extensive tract of country. Their cities were Tuessis (*k*), Tamea (*l*), and Banatia (*m*). Ptoroton (*n*), situated at the mouth of the Varar (*o*), on the coast, was at the same time a Roman station, and the chief city of the province. The most remarkable rivers of this region, after the Varar, which formed the boundary, were the Tuesis (*p*) and Celnus (*q*). Vacomagi.

48. Within the Vacomagi, and the Tavus, lived the Damnii Albani (*r*), a people little known, being wholly secluded among lakes and mountains. Damnii  
Albani.

49. Lower down, to the banks of the Clotta, inhabited the Attacotti (*s*), a people once formidable to all Britain. In this part is situated the great lake formerly called Lynchalidor (*t*), at the mouth of which the city of Alcuith (*u*) was built by the Romans, and not long afterwards received its name from Theodosius, who Attacotti.

(*f*) Probably Old Aberdeen.

(*g*) Dee.

(*h*) Ithan.

(*i*) Kinnaird Head.

(*j*) The Vacomagi were spread over an extensive region west of the Taixali and north of the Grampians, comprising a considerable part of Aberdeen, all Banff, Murray, Elgin, and Nairn, with the north-east of Inverness.

(*k*) On the Spey.

(*l*) Brae Mar Castle.

(*m*) Uncertain, but near the Ness; perhaps Inverness or Bonness.

(*n*) Burgh Head.

(*o*) Murray Frith.

(*p*) Spey.

(*q*) Dovern.

(*r*) The Damnii Albani may have been a remnant of the Damnii, who, after the erection of the wall, being cut off from the rest of their tribe, were gradually circumscribed by the neighbouring people, to Braidalbane, and a small part of the west of Perth and east of Argyle.

(*s*) The Attacotti occupied a considerable part of Argyle, as far as Lochfyn.

(*t*) Loch Lomond.

(*u*) Dumbarton. It was afterwards called Theodosia.



recovered that province from the barbarians. These people deserved high praise for having sustained the attacks of the enemy after the subjugation of the neighbouring provinces.

50. This province was named *Vespasiana*, in honour of the Flavian family, to which the emperor Domitian owed his origin, and under whom it was conquered. If I am not mistaken, it was called under the later emperors *Thule*, which Claudian mentions in these lines :

“ ————— incaluit Pictorum sanguine Thule,  
Scotorum cumulos flevit glacialis Hierne.”

But this country was so short a time under the power of the Romans, that posterity cannot ascertain its appellations or subjugation. We have now examined in a cursory manner the state of Britain under the Romans; we shall next as briefly treat of the country of the Caledonians.

#### CONCERNING CALEDONIA.

51. Although all the parts of Britain lying beyond the Isthmus may be termed Caledonia, yet the proper Caledonians dwelt beyond the *Varar*, from which a line drawn accurately points out the boundary of the Roman empire in Britain. The hithermost part of the island was at different times in their possession, and the remainder, as we have related, was occupied by barbarous Britons. The ancient documents of history afford some information thus far; but beyond the *Varar* the light is extinct, and we are enveloped in darkness (*v*). Although

(*v*) It must be confessed that the information preserved by Richard, in regard to this remote part of our island, is extremely obscure, and that his descriptions will only assist us in guessing at the situation of the different tribes. Perhaps this can scarcely be deemed extraordinary, when we consider how imperfectly the interior of this country is known even at present.

we know that the Romans erected altars there to mark the limits of their empire, and that Ulysses, tost by a violent tempest, here fulfilled his vows; yet the thick woods and a continued chain of rugged mountains forbid all further research. We must therefore be satisfied with the following information, gleaned from the wandering merchants of the Britons, which we leave for the use of posterity.

52. The Caledonians (*w*), properly so called, inhabited Caledonians. the country to the westward of the Varar, and part of their territory was covered by the extensive forest called the Caledonian wood.

53. Less considerable people dwelt near the coast. Of these the Cantæ (*x*) were situated beyond the Varar, Cantæ. and the above-mentioned altars, to the river Loxa (*y*), and in their territory was the promontory Penox-ullum (*z*).

54. Next in order is the river Abona (*a*), and the inhabitants near it, the Logi (*b*). Then the river Ila (*c*), Logi. near which lived the Carnabii (*d*), the most remote of the Britons. These people being subdued by the prætor Ostorius, and impatiently bearing the Roman yoke, joined the Cantæ, as tradition relates, and, crossing the sea, here fixed their residence. Britain in these parts branches out into many promontories, the chief of which, the extremity of Caledonia, was called by the ancients Vinvedrum, and afterwards Verubium (*e*).

(*w*) The country of the proper Caledonians was the central part of Inverness and Ross.

(*x*) The Cantæ seem to have held Cromarty and East Ross.

(*y*) Frith of Cromartie, *Stukeley*. Loth R. *Roy*.

(*z*) Tarbet Ness, *Stukeley*. Ord Head, Caithness, *Roy*.

(*a*) Frith of Dornoch, *Stukeley*.

(*b*) The Logi seem to have held the south-east of Strathnavern and north-east of Sutherland.

(*c*) All, *Stukeley*. Shiel, *Roy*.

(*d*) The Carnabii inhabited part of Caithness, the north of Ross, and central part of Sutherland.

(*e*) Ness or Noss Head, *Stukeley*.



Catini.

Mertæ.

55. After these people were placed the Catini (*f*), and the Mertæ (*g*) further inland near the Logi. In these regions was the promontory of the Orcades (*h*), contiguous to which are the islands of that name. Beyond this part flowed the Nabæus (*i*), which bounded the territory of the Carnabii.

Carnonacæ.

56. In the lower part of this region were situated the Carnonacæ (*j*), in whose territories was the promontory Ebudum (*k*), beyond which the ocean forms a large bay, formerly called Volsas (*l*). The lower coast of this bay was inhabited by the Ceronæ (*m*); and beyond the Itys (*n*), the territory of the Creonæ extended as far as the Longus (*o*). The promontory stretching from thence, and washed by the ocean and the bay Lelanus (*p*), is named after the inhabitants the Epidii (*q*).

57. I cannot repass the Varar without expressing my wonder that the Romans, in other respects so much distinguished for judgment and investigation, should have entertained the absurd notion, that the remainder of Britain exceeded in length and breadth the regions which they had subdued and occupied. There is, however, sufficient evidence that such was their opinion;

(*f*) The Catini held part of Caithness and the east of Sutherland.

(*g*) The Mertæ held the country comprised between the Catini and Carnabii.

(*h*) Dunnet Head, *Stukeley*. Duncansby Head, *Roy*.

(*i*) Naver.

(*j*) The Carnonacæ seem to have held the detached portion of Cromarty, situated near Loch Broom, and a small part on the border of Sutherland.

(*k*) Cape Wrath.

(*l*) Loch Broom.

(*m*) The Ceronæ held the north-west part of Ross;—the Creonæ, south-west of Ross and Inverness, and a part of Argyle.

(*n*) Shiel, *Roy*.

(*o*) Loch Loch, *Stukeley*. Linnhe Loch, *Roy*.

(*p*) Lochfyn.

(*q*) The Epidii probably occupied the western part of Argyle, as far as the Mull of Cantyr, and were bounded on one side by the sea and on the other by Lochfyn.

for whoever attentively considers their insatiable desire of rule, and reflects on the labour employed in the erection of those stupendous works which excite the wonder of the world, in order to exclude an enemy scarcely worthy of their notice or resentment, must in this respect, as in all others, adore the providence of the Divine Being, to whom all kingdoms are subject, and perpetual glory is due, now and for ever. Amen!

---

## CHAPTER VII.

THE different parts of Britain having been cursorily examined according to my original design, it seems necessary, before I proceed to a description of the islands, to attend to a doubt suggested by a certain person (*r*). "Where," asks he, "are the vestiges of those cities and names which you commemorate? There are none." This question may be answered by another: Where are now the Assyrians, Parthians, Sarmatians, Celtiberians? None will be bold enough to deny the existence of those nations. Are there not also at this time many countries and cities bearing the same names as they did two or three thousand years ago? Judea, Italy, Gaul, Britain, are as clearly known now as in former times; Londinium is still styled in the common language, with a slight change of sound, London. The negligence and inattention of our ancestors in omitting to collect and preserve such documents as might have been serviceable in this particular, are not deserving of heavy censure, for scarcely any but those in holy orders

(*r*) These remarks prove how much Richard rose superior to the prejudices of his age and his profession. From the tone which he assumes, it is, however, evident that he found it advisable to yield to the remonstrances of his superior.



employed themselves in writing books, and such even esteemed it inconsistent with their sacred office to engage in such profane labours. I rather think I may without danger, and without offence, transmit to posterity that information which I have drawn from a careful examination and accurate scrutiny of ancient records, concerning the state of this kingdom in former periods. The good abbot, indeed, had nearly inspired me with other sentiments, by thus seeming to address me: Are you ignorant how short a time is allotted us in this world; that the greatest exertions cannot exempt us from the appellation of unprofitable servants; and that all our studies should be directed to the purpose of being useful to others? Of what service are these things, but to delude the world with unmeaning trifles? To these remarks I answer with propriety: Is then every honest gratification forbidden? Do not such narratives exhibit proofs of Divine Providence? Does it not hence appear, that an evangelical sermon concerning the death and merits of Christ enlightened and subdued a world overrun with Gentile superstitions? To the reply, that such things are properly treated of in systems of chronology, I rejoin: Nor is it too much to know that our ancestors were not, as some assert, Autochthones, sprung from the earth; but that God opened the book of Nature to display his omnipotence, such as it is described in the writings of Moses. When the abbot answered, that works which were intended merely to acquire reputation for their authors from posterity, should be committed to the flames, I confess with gratitude that I repented of this undertaking. The remainder of the work is therefore only a chronological abridgment, which I present to the reader, whom I commend to the goodness and protection of God; and at the same time request, that he will pray for me to our holy Father, who is merciful and inclined to forgiveness.

The following Itinerary is collected from certain fragments left by a Roman general. The order is changed in some instances, according to Ptolemy and others, and, it is hoped, with improvement (*r*).

AMONG the Britons were formerly ninety-two cities, of which thirty-three were more celebrated and conspicuous. Two municipal (*s*), Verolamium (*t*); and Eboracum (*u*). Nine colonial (*v*); namely, Londinium (*w*) *Augusta*, Camalodunum (*x*) *Geminæ Martiæ*, Rhutupis (*y*), \* \* \* \* \* Thermæ (*z*) *Aquæ Solis*, Isca (*a*) *Secunda*, Deva (*b*) *Getica*, Glevum (*c*) *Claudia*, Lindum (*d*), \* \* \* \* \* Camboricum (*e*). \* \* \* \* \* Ten cities under the Latian law (*f*); namely, Durnomagus (*g*), Catarracton (*h*), Cambodunum (*i*), Coccium (*j*), Lugu-

Ninety-two cities.

(*r*) As the Itinerary is given in the Commentary and in the original Treatise, it is omitted in this place.

(*s*) Municipia were towns whose inhabitants possessed in general all the rights of Roman citizens, except those which could not be enjoyed without an actual residence at Rome. They followed their own laws and customs, and had the option of adopting or rejecting those of Rome.—*Rosini Antiq. Rom. b. x. c. 23.*

(*t*) St. Alban's.

(*u*) York.

(*v*) There were different kinds of colonies, each entitled to different rights and privileges; but we have no criterion to ascertain the rank occupied by those in Britain.

(*w*) London.

(*x*) Colchester.

(*y*) Richborough in Kent.

(*z*) Bath.

(*a*) Caerleon.

(*b*) Chester.

(*c*) Gloucester.

(*d*) Lincoln.

(*e*) Cambridge.

(*f*) The Latian law consisted of the privileges granted to the ancient inhabitants of Latium. These are not distinctly known; but appear principally to have been the right of following their own laws, an exemption from the edicts of the Roman Prætor, and the option of adopting the laws and customs of Rome.—*Rosini.*

(*g*) Castor on Nen.

(*h*) Catteric.

(*i*) Slack.

(*j*) Blackrode.



balia (*k*), Ptoroton (*l*), Victoria (*m*), Theodosia (*n*), Corinum (*o*), Sorbiodunum (*p*). Twelve stipendiary (*q*) and of lesser consequence ; Venta Silurum (*r*), Venta Belgarum (*s*), Venta Icenorum (*t*), Segontium (*u*), Muridunum (*v*), Ragæ (*w*), Cantiopolis (*x*), Durinum (*y*), Isca (*z*), Bremenium (*a*), Vindonum (*b*), and Durobri-væ (*c*). But let no one lightly imagine that the Romans had not many others besides those above mentioned. I have only commemorated the more celebrated. For who can doubt that they who, as conquerors of the world, were at liberty to choose, did not select places fitted for their purposes ? They for the most part took up their abode in fortresses which they constructed for themselves.

(The Itinerary, which follows here in the original Latin, being a dry list of names, is omitted. See the original Latin, and also the Appendix to the Itinerary.)

## CHAPTER VIII.

Ireland.

1. HAVING now finished our survey of Albion, we shall describe the neighbouring country, Hybernica or Ireland, with the same brevity.

2. Hybernica is situated more westerly than any other country except England ; but as it does not extend so

(*k*) Carlisle.

(*l*) Burgh Head, Elgin, Scotland.

(*m*) Dealgin Ross.

(*n*) Dumbarton.

(*o*) Cirencester, Gloc.

(*p*) Old Sarum.

(*q*) The Stipendiary were those who paid their taxes in money, in contradistinction from those who gave a certain portion of the produce of the soil, and were called Vectigales.—*Rosini*.

(*r*) Caerwent, Monmouth.

(*s*) Winchester.

(*t*) Castor, near Norwich.

(*u*) Caer Segont.

(*v*) Caermarthen.

(*w*) Leicester.

(*x*) Canterbury.

(*y*) Dorchester.

(*z*) Exeter.

(*a*) Riechester, Northumberland.

(*b*) Possibly Egbury camp, Hants.

(*c*) Rochester.

far north, so it stretches further than England towards the south, and the Spanish province of Tarraconensis, from which it is separated by the ocean (*d*).

3. The sea which flows between Britain and Hyber-<sup>Man.</sup>nia is subject to storms, and, according to Solinus, is navigable only during a few days in summer. Midway between the two countries is the island called Mo-nœda (*e*), but now Manavia.

4. According to Bede, Hybernica is preferable to Britain, on account of its situation, salubrity and serene air, insomuch that snow seldom remains more than three days, nor is it usual to make hay for the winter, or build stalls for cattle.

5. No reptile is found there, nor does it maintain a viper or serpent; for serpents frequently carried from England have died on approaching the shore. Indeed almost all things in the island are antidotes to poison. We have seen an infusion of scraped pieces of bark brought from Hybernica, given to persons bitten by serpents, which immediately deprived the poison of its force, and abated the swelling.

6. This island, according to the venerable Bede, is rich in milk and honey; nor is it without vines. It abounds with fish and birds, and affords deer and goats for the chase.

7. The inhabitants, says Mela, are more than other nations uncivilized and without virtue, and those who have a little knowledge are wholly destitute of piety. Solinus calls them an inhospitable and warlike people. The conquerors, after drinking the blood of the slain, daub their faces with the remainder. They know no distinction between right and wrong. When a woman brings forth a son, she places its first food on the point

(*d*) As we have neither the assistance of an Itinerary to guide us in our researches, nor a local knowledge of Ireland, we have not attempted to specify the situation of the ancient states and cities in that island.

(*e*) Man.



of her husband's sword, and, introducing it into the mouth of the infant, wishes, according to the custom of the country, that he may die amidst arms and in battle. Those who are fond of ornaments adorn the hilts of their swords with the teeth of marine animals, which they polish to a degree of whiteness equal to ivory ; for the principal glory of a man consists in the splendour of his arms.

8. Agrippa states the length of Hybernia to be six hundred miles, and the breadth three hundred. It was formerly inhabited by twenty tribes, of whom (*fourteen* (*f*)) lived on the coast.

9. This is the true country of the Scots, who emigrating from hence added a third nation to the Britons and Picts in Albion. But I cannot agree with Bede, who affirms that the Scots were foreigners. For, according to the testimony of other authors, I conceive they derived their origin from Britain, situated at no considerable distance, passed over from thence, and obtained a settlement in this island. It is certain that the Damnii, Voluntii, Brigantes, Cangi, and other nations, were descended from the Britons, and passed over thither after Divitiacus, or Claudius, or Ostorius, or other victorious generals had invaded their original countries. Lastly, the ancient language, which resembles the old British and Gallic tongues, affords another argument, as is well known to persons skilled in both languages (*g*).

10. The Deucalidonian Ocean washes the northern side of Hybernia ; the Vergivian and Internal the eastern, the Cantabric the south, as the great British or Atlantic Ocean does the western. According to this order, we shall give a description of the island and the most remarkable places.

(*f*) In the original is an error in the numerals, the number afterwards specified is fourteen.

(*g*) Nearly one third of the words in the Irish tongue are the same as the modern Welsh, and many idioms and modes of speech are common to both languages.

11. The Rhobogdii occupied the coast of the island Rhobogdii. next to the Deucalidonian Sea. Their metropolis was Rhobogdium. In the eastern part of their territories was situated the promontory of the same name; in the western, the Promontorium Boreum, or Northern Promontory. Their rivers were the Banna, Darabouna, Argitta, and Vidua; and towards the south, mountains separated them from the Scotti.

12. On the coast between the northern and Venician Promontory, and as far as the mouth of the Rhebeus, dwelt the Venicini. Venicini. To them the contiguous islands owe their name. Their capital was Rheba. The Nagnatæ dwelt below the Rhebeus as far as the Libnius, and their celebrated metropolis was called after them. The Austerii lived in a recess of the bay of Ausoba, towards the south, and their chief city was named after them. The Concangii occupied the lower part of the same region, near the southern confines of which flowed the river Senus, a noble river, on which was situated their chief city Macobicum. Hybernia in this part being contracted, terminates in a narrow point. The Velatorii inhabited the country near the southern promontory by the river Senus; their metropolis was Regia, and their river Durius. The Lucani were situated where the river Ibernus flows into the ocean.

13. The southern side of the island stretched from the Promontorium Austriacum, or Southern Promontory, to the Sacred Promontory. Here lived the Ibernii, Ibernii. whose metropolis was Rhufina. Next was the river Dobona, and the people called Vodiæ, whose promontory of the same name lies opposite to the Promontorium Antivestæum in England, at about the distance of one hundred and forty-five miles. Not far from thence is the river Dabrona, the boundary of the Brigantes, who have also the river Briga for their limit, and whose chief city is called Brigantia.



Menapii. 14. The part of this island which reaches from the Sacred Promontory as far as Rhobogdium is called the Eastern. The Menapii, inhabiting the Sacred Promontory, had their chief city upon the river Modona called by the same name. From this part to Menapia (*h*) in Dimetia, the distance, according to Pliny, is thirty miles. One of these countries, but which is uncertain, gave birth to Carausius. Beyond these people the Cauci had their metropolis Dunum; and the river Oboca washed their boundaries. Both these nations were undoubtedly of Teutonic origin; but it is not known at what precise time their ancestors first passed over, though most probably a little while before Cæsar's arrival in Britain.

Voluntii. 15. Beyond these were the Eblanæ, whose chief city was Mediolanum, upon the river Lœbius. More to the north was Lebarum, the city of the Voluntii, whose rivers were Vinderus and Buvinda. The Damnii occupied the part of the island lying above these people, and contiguous to the Rhobogdii. Their chief city was Dunum, where St. Patrick, St. Columba, and St. Bridget are supposed to be buried in one tomb.

Coriondii. 16. It remains now to give some account of those people who lived in the interior parts. The Coriondii bordered upon the Cauci and Menapii, above the Brigantes: the Scotti possessed the remaining part of the island, which from them took the name of Scotia. Among many of their cities, the remembrance of two only has reached our times: the one Rheba, on the lake and river Rhebius; the other Ibernica, situated at the east side of the river Senus.

17. I cannot omit mentioning in this place that the Damnii, Voluntii, Brigantes, and Cangiani were all nations of British origin, who being either molested by

(*h*) St. David's.

neighbouring enemies, or unable to pay the heavy tribute exacted of them, gradually passed over into this country in search of new settlements. With respect to the Menapii, Cauai, and some other people, it has been before remarked that many things occur which cannot safely be relied on. Tacitus relates that Hybernia was more frequented by foreigners than Albion. But in that case, the ancients would undoubtedly have left us a more ample and credible account of this island. While I am writing a description of Hybernia, it seems right to add, that it was reduced under the Roman power, not by arms, but by fear; and moreover, that Ptolemy, in his second map of Europe, and other celebrated geographers, have erred in placing it at too great a distance from Britain, and from the northern part of the province Secunda, as appears from their books and maps.

18. North of Hybernia are the Hebudes, five (i) in Hebudes. number, the inhabitants of which know not the use of corn, but live on fish and milk. They are all, according to Solinus, subject to one chief, for they are only divided from each other by narrow straits. The chief possessed no peculiar property, but was maintained by general contribution: he was bound by certain laws; and lest avarice should seduce him from equity, he learned justice from poverty, having no house nor property, and being maintained at the public expense. He had no wife; but took by turns any woman for whom he felt an inclination, and hence had neither a wish nor hope for children. Some persons have written concerning these Hebudes, that during winter darkness continues for the space of thirty days; but Cæsar upon diligent

(i) The Hebudes amount to more than five. From hence it may perhaps be inferred that the Roman fleet in their voyage of discovery did not reach these seas, though they coasted the northern part of Scotland, for the Orcades are rightly numbered.



inquiry found this assertion untrue, and only discovered by certain measures of time that the nights were shorter here than in Gaul.

Orcades.

19. The Orcades, according to some accounts, are distant from the Hebudes seven days and nights' sail; but this is erroneous. They are thirty in number, and contiguous to each other. They were uninhabited, without wood, and abounded with reeds: several were formed only of sand and rocks, as may be collected from Solinus and others.

Thule.

20. Thule, the last of the British isles, is placed by Mela opposite to (j) the coast of the Belgæ. It has been celebrated in Greek and Roman verse. Thus the Mantuan Homer says,—

“ Et tibi serviat ultima Thule.”

Here are no nights during the solstice when the sun passes the sign of Cancer; and on the other hand, in winter there are no days, as Pliny asserts. These circumstances are supposed to happen for six whole months. The inhabitants, as Solinus affirms, in the beginning of the spring live among their cattle upon herbs, then upon milk, and lay up fruits against the winter. They have their women in common without marriages. Thule, according to the same author, abounds in fruits. At the distance of a day's sail from Thule the sea is difficult to pass through, and frozen; it is by some called Cronium. From Thule to Caledonia is two days' sail.

Thanatos.

21. The isle of Thanatos (k) is bounded by a narrow channel, and separated from the continent of Britain by a small æstuary called the Wantsuam. It is rich in pasture and corn. According to Isidorus, its soil is

(j) Littori apposita, Richard. From the map, and the sense in which this phrase is generally used in geography, it might be rendered *under the same meridian*. (k) Thanet.

not only salubrious to itself, but to others, for no snakes live in it, and the earth being carried to a distance destroys them. It is not far distant from Rhutupis (*l*).

22. The isle of Vecta (*m*), conquered by Vespasian, Vecta. is thirty miles in length, on the side next to the Belgæ, from east to west, and twelve from north to south. In the eastern part it is six miles, in the western three, from the above-mentioned southern shore of Britain.

23. Besides the isles just specified, there were VII Acmodæ (*n*), Ricnea (*o*), Silimnus (*p*), Andros (*q*), Sigdiles (*r*), XL Vindilios (*s*), Sarna (*t*), Cæsarea (*u*), and Cassiterides (*v*).

24. The island Sena, opposite the Ossismican (*w*) Sena. coast, is according to Mela famous for the oracle of the Gallic deity, of whom the priestesses, sanctified by perpetual virginity, are said to have been nine in number. The Gauls call them Senæ, and suppose them gifted with singular powers; that they raise the winds and the seas with incantations, change themselves into what animals they please, and cure disorders which in other places yield to no remedy; that they have the knowledge of future events, and prophesy. They are not favourable except to mariners, and only to such as go thither for the purpose of consulting them.

25. The rest of the isles of smaller size and consequence which lie round Albion will be better perceived and known by the inspection of the annexed map than from any description. Here, therefore, we stop, and anxiously commend our labours to the favour and judgment of the benevolent reader.

(*l*) Richborough.

(*m*) Wight.

(*n*)—(*s*) No geographer has hitherto attempted to ascertain the modern names of these islands.

(*t*) Guernsey.

(*u*) Jersey.

(*v*) Scilly Isles.

(*w*) From a tribe of the Veneti called Ossismii, who inhabited part of Bretagne.



The first book of the geographical Commentary on the situation of Britain, and those stations which the Romans erected in that island, is happily finished, through the assistance of God, by the hand of Richard, servant of Christ and monk of Westminster. Thanks be to God!

THE  
ANCIENT STATE OF BRITAIN.

---

---

BOOK II.

---

---

PREFACE.

WE have thought proper to add as a supplement to the description of ancient Britain in the same summary manner:—I. An epitome of chronology from the creation to the sack of Rome by the Goths: II. A short account of the Roman emperors, and governors, who presided over this country: III. Some persons will perhaps say that this kind of work is not absolutely necessary either for divine worship or greater things. But let them know that leisure hours may be dedicated to the study of the antiquities of our country without any derogation from the sacred character. Yet if censorious people envy us such pleasures at leisure hours, hastening to the end and almost arrived at the goal, we here check our steps.

---

CHAPTER I.

IV. IN the beginning, the Almighty Creator made this world, inhabited by us and other creatures, out of nothing, in the space of six days.



Creation.

V. In the year of the world 1656, the Creator, to punish the increasing wickedness of mankind, sent a flood upon the earth, which, overwhelming the whole world, destroyed every living creature except those which had entered the ark, and whose progeny replenished the new world with colonies of living beings.

VI. 3000. About this time some persons affirm that Britain was cultivated and first inhabited, when it was visited by the Greek and Phœnician merchants. Nor are those wanting who believe that London was shortly after built by a king called Bryto.

VII. 3228. The brothers Romulus and Remus laid the foundation of Rome, which in time became the common terror of all nations.

Senones.

VIII. 3600. The Senones, having emigrated from Britain, passed through Gaul, with the intent to invade Italy and attack Rome.

Belgæ.

Celtæ.

IX. 3650. The Belgæ entered this country, and the Celtæ occupied the region deserted by the Senones. Divitiacus king of the Ædui soon afterwards passed over with an army and subdued great part of this kingdom. About this time the Britons who were expelled by the Belgæ emigrated to Ireland, formed a settlement, and were thenceforward called Scotti.

Cassibelin.

X. 3943. Cassibelinus waged war with the maritime states (*a*).

Cæsar.

XI. 3946. Cæsar overcame the Germans, Gauls, and also the Britons, to whom, before this time, even the name of the Romans was unknown. The conqueror, having received hostages, rendered the people tributary.

XII. 3947. At length coming a second time into this country, upon the invitation, as he pretended, of the Trinobantes, he waged war with Cassibelinus king of the Cassii. Suetonius, however, asserts, with greater proba-

(*a*) Probably from Cæsar, though the precise date seems to be fixed without authority.—*Cæs. de Bell. Gall. lib. 5, § 9.*

bility, that he was allured by the costly pearls of Britain.

XIII. 4044. The emperor Claudius passed over to Britain, and in the space of six months, almost without effusion of blood, reduced a great part of the island, which he ordered to be called *Cæsariensis*. Claudius.

XIV. 4045. Vespasian, at that time in a private station, being sent by the emperor Claudius with the second legion into this country, attacked the Belgæ and Damnonii, and having fought thirty-two battles and taken twenty cities, reduced them under the Roman power, together with the Isle of Wight. Vespasian.

XV. 4047. The Romans occupied *Thermæ* and *Glebon*.

XVI. 4050. Ostorius the Roman general, after a war of nine years, overcame *Charaticus* king of the *Silures*, great part of Britain was reduced into a province, and the colony of *Camalodunum* founded. Ostorius.

XVII. 4052. Certain cities of the Belgæ were yielded by the Romans to *Cogibundus*, that he might form a kingdom. About this time the *Cangi* and *Brigantes* went over and settled in Ireland.

XVIII. 4061. The emperor Nero, having no courage for military enterprises, nearly lost Britain; for under him its two greatest cities were taken and destroyed. *Bonduica*, in order to revenge the injury offered to her by the Romans, rose in arms, burnt the Roman colonies of *London*, *Camalodunum*, and the municipal town *Verulamium*, and slew more than eighty thousand Roman citizens. She was at length overcome by *Suetonius*, who amply avenged the loss, by slaughtering an equal number of her subjects. Nero.

XIX. 4073. *Cerealis* conquered the *Brigantes*. Cerealis.

XX. 4076. *Frontinus* punished the *Ordovices*. Frontinus.

XXI. 4080. *Agricola* after a severe engagement subdued *Galgacus* king of the *Caledonians*. He ordered all the island to be examined by a fleet, and having sailed round its coasts, added the *Orcades* to the Roman empire. Agricola.



- Hadrian. XXII. 4120. The emperor Hadrian himself came into the island, and separated one part of it from the other by an immense wall.
- Urbicus. XXIII. 4140. Urbicus being sent hither by Antoninus Pius, distinguished himself by his victories.
- Aurelius. XXIV. 4150. Aurelius Antoninus also obtained victories over some of the Britons.
- Lucius. XXV. 4160. Britain was enlightened by the introduction of Christianity, during the reign of Lucius, who first submitted himself to the cross of Christ.
- Reuda. XXVI. 4170. The Romans were driven from the Vespasian province. About this time it is supposed that king Reuda came with his people, the Picts, from the islands into Britain.
- Severus. XXVII. 4207. The emperor Severus, passing over into Britain, repaired the wall built by the Romans which had been ruined, and died not long after, by the visitation of God, at York.
- Caracalla. XXVIII. 4211. Bassianus (Caracalla) obtained a venal peace from the Mæatae.
- XXIX. 4220. During these times the Roman armies confined themselves within the wall, and all the island enjoyed a profound peace.
- Carausius. XXX. 4290. Carausius, having assumed the purple, seized upon Britain; but ten years afterwards it was recovered by Asclepiodorus.
- XXXI. 4304. A cruel and inveterate persecution, in which within the space of a month seventeen thousand martyrs suffered in the cause of Christ. This persecution spread over the sea, and the Britons, Alban, Aaron and Julius, with great numbers of men and women, were condemned to a happy death.
- Constantius. XXXII. 4306. Constantius, a man of the greatest humanity, having conquered Alectum, died at Eboracum in the sixteenth year of his reign.
- Constantine. XXXIII. 4307. Constantine, afterwards called the Great, son of Constantius by Helena, a British woman,



was created emperor in Britain; and Ireland voluntarily became tributary to him.

XXXIV. 4320. The Scotti entered Britain under Scotti. the conduct of the king Fergusius, and here fixed their residence.

XXXV. 4385. Theodosius slew Maximus the tyrant Theodosius. three miles from Aquileia. Maximus, having nearly drained Britain of all its warlike youth, who followed the footsteps of his tyranny over Gaul, the fierce transmarine nations of the Scots from the south, and the Picts from the north, perceiving the island without soldiers and defenceless, oppressed it and laid it waste during a long series of years.

XXXVI. 4396. The Britons indignantly submitting to the attacks of the Scots and Picts, sent to Rome, made an offer of submission, and requested assistance against their enemies. A legion being accordingly dispatched to their assistance, slew a great multitude of the barbarians, and drove the remainder beyond the confines of Britain. The legion, upon its departure homewards, advised its allies to construct a wall between the two æstuaries to restrain the enemy. A wall was accordingly made in an unskilful manner, with a greater proportion of turf than stone, which was of no advantage; for on the departure of the Romans the former enemies returned in ships, slew, trampled on, and devoured all things before them like a ripened harvest.

XXXVII. 4400. Assistance being again entreated, the Romans came, and with the aid of the Britons drove the enemy beyond sea, and built a wall from sea to sea, not as before with earth, but with solid stone, between the fortresses erected in that part to curb the enemy. On the southern coast, where an invasion of the Saxons was apprehended, he erected watch towers. This was the work of Stilicho, as appears from Claudian. Stilicho.

XXXVIII. 4411. Rome, the seat of the fourth and



Goths. greatest of the monarchies, was seized by the Goths, as Daniel prophesied, in the year one thousand one hundred and sixty-four after its foundation.

From this time ceased the Roman empire in Britain, four hundred and sixty-five years after the arrival of Julius Cæsar.

XXXIX. 4446. The Roman legion retiring from Britain, and refusing to return, the Scots and Picts ravaged all the island from the north as far as the wall, the guards of which being slain, taken prisoners, or driven away, and the wall itself broken through, the predatory enemy then poured into the country. An epistle was sent filled with tears and sorrows to Fl. Ætius, thrice consul, in the twenty-third year of Theodosius, begging the assistance of the Roman power, but without effect.

---

## CHAPTER II.

1. HAVING followed truth as far as possible, if any thing should occur not strictly consistent with it, I request it may not be imputed to me as a fault. Confining myself closely to the rules and laws of history, I have collected all the accounts of other persons which I found most accurate and deserving of credit. The reader must not expect any thing beyond an enumeration of those emperors and Roman governors who had authority over this island. With an account of these I shall close my book.

Cæsar. 2. Julius Cæsar the dictator was the first of the Romans who invaded Britain with an army, during the reign of Cassibelinus; but, although he defeated the inhabitants in one battle, and occupied the coast, as Tacitus observes, he rather seems to have shown the

way to his successors than to have given them possession.

3. In a short time the civil wars succeeding, the arms of the chiefs were turned against the republic. Britain was also long neglected by the advice of Augustus and the command of Tiberius. It is certain that Caligula intended to enter Britain; but his quick temper and proneness to change, or the unsuccessful attempts against the Germans, prevented him.

4. Claudius, however, carried war into Britain, which Claudius. no Roman emperor since Julius Cæsar had reached, and, having transported his legions and allies without danger or bloodshed, in a few days reduced a part of the island. He afterwards sent over Vespasian, at that time in a private station, who fought two and thirty battles with the enemy, and added to the Roman empire two very powerful nations, with their kings, twenty cities, and the isle of Vecta, contiguous to Britain. He overcame the remainder by means of Cneas Sentius and Aulus Plautius. For these exploits he obtained a great triumph.

5. To him succeeded Ostorius Scapula, a man famous Ostorius Scapula. in war, who reduced the nearest part of Britain into a province, and added the colony of the veterans, Camalodunum. Certain cities were delivered up to the chief Cogibundus, who, according to Tacitus, remained faithful till the accession of Trajan to the empire.

6. Avitus Didius Gallus kept possession of what his Avitus Didius Gallus. predecessors had acquired, a few posts only being removed further into the interior, in order to obtain the credit of extending his dominion.

7. Didius Verannius, who succeeded, died within a Didius Verannius. year.

8. Suetonius Paulinus continued prosperous for two Suetonius Paulinus. years. The tribes being reduced and garrisons established, he attacked the isle of Mona, because it gave succour to the rebellious, and afforded opportunities for



invasion. For the absence of the governor removing all fear, the Britons began to recover courage, and rose in arms under the conduct of Bonduica, a woman of royal descent. Having reduced the troops scattered in the garrisons, they attacked the colony (*a*) itself, as the seat of slavery, and in the height of rage and victory, exercised every species of savage barbarity. Had not Paulinus, on receiving the intelligence, luckily hastened to crush the revolt, Britain must have been lost. But the fortune of one battle restored it to its former submission. Many of the natives, from the consciousness of their defection, and fear of the governor, continued under arms.

Suetonius.

9. Suetonius, in other respects an illustrious man, but arrogant to the vanquished and prompt to avenge his own injuries, being likely to exercise severity, he was replaced by Petronius Turpilianus, who was more merciful, a stranger to the offences of the enemy, and therefore more likely to be softened by their repentance. Having settled the disturbances, he gave up the province to Trebellius Maximus.

Trebellius.

10. Trebellius, being of a slothful disposition and unused to war, retained the province by gentleness. The barbarous Britons' ceasing to be ignorant of luxury, and the termination of civil wars, gave him an excuse for inactivity. But discord called forth his exertions; for the soldiery, when released from military labours, grew wanton from too much rest. Trebellius, having evaded the rage of the army by flight, was shortly allowed to resume the command, the licentiousness of the soldiery becoming as it were a composition for the safety of the general. This sedition ended without bloodshed.

Vectius Bolanus.

11. Nor did Vectius Bolanus, although the civil wars still continued, harass Britain by restoring discipline.

(*a*) Camalodunum.



There was the same inactivity towards the enemy, and the same insubordination in the garrisons ; but Bolanus, being a good man and not disliked, acquired affection instead of authority.

12. But when, with the rest of the world, Vespasian had recovered Britain, we see distinguished generals, famous armies, and the enemy dispirited: Petilius Cerealis immediately excited terror by attacking the state of the Brigantes, which was esteemed the most populous of the province. Many battles were fought, some of which were bloody, and a great part of the Brigantian territory was either conquered or invaded.

Petilius Cerealis.

13. But although Cerealis had diminished the care and fame of his successor, the burthen was sustained by Julius Frontinus, a man of high courage. Overcoming at once the spirit of the enemy and the difficulties of the country, he subjugated the warlike and powerful nation of the Silures.

Julius Frontinus.

14. To him succeeded Agricola, who not only maintained the peace of the province ; but for seven years carried on war against the Caledonians and their warlike king Galgacus. He thus added to the Roman empire nations hitherto unknown.

Agricola.

15. But Domitian, envying the superior glory of Agricola, recalled him, and sent his lieutenant Lucullus into Britain, because he had suffered lances of a new form, *Lucculeas*, to be named after him.

Lucullus.

16. His successor was Trebellius, under whom the two provinces, namely, Vespasiana and Maëta, were wrested from the Roman government ; for the Romans gave themselves up to luxury.

Trebellius.

17. About this time the emperor Hadrian visiting this island, erected a wall justly wonderful, and left Julius Severus his deputy in Britain.

Hadrian.

18. From this time nothing worthy of attention is related, until Antoninus Pius carried on so many wars by his generals. He conquered the Britons by means



Lollius Urbicus. of Lollius Urbicus, the proprætor, and Saturninus, præfect of the fleet, and, the barbarians being driven back, another wall was built. He recovered the province afterwards called Valentia.

Aurelius. 19. Pius dying, Aurelius Antoninus gained many victories over the Britons and Germans.

Marcellus. 20. On the death of Antoninus, when the Romans deemed their acquisitions insufficient, they suffered a great defeat under Marcellus.

Pertinax. 21. To him succeeded Pertinax, who conducted himself as an able general.

Clodius Albinus. 22. The next was Clodius Albinus, who contended with Severus for the sceptre and purple.

Virius Lupus. 23. After these, the first who enjoyed the title of lieutenant was Virius Lupus: he did not perform many splendid actions; for his glory was intercepted by the unconquerable Severus, who, having rapidly put the enemy to flight, repaired the wall of Hadrian, now become ruinous, and restored it to its former perfection. Had he lived, he intended to extirpate the very name of the barbarians; but he died by the visitation of God, among the Brigantes, in the city of Eboracum.

24. Alexander succeeded, who gained some victories in the East, and died at Edessa.

25. His successors were the lieutenants Lucilianus, M. Furius, N. Philippus \* \* \* \* \*, who, if we except the preservation of the boundaries, performed hardly any thing worthy of notice.

26. Afterwards \* \* \* \* \*

*The rest is wanting.*

RICARDI  
MONACHI WESTMONASTERIENSIS  
COMMENTARIOLI GEOGRAPHICI  
DE  
SITU BRITANNIÆ  
ET  
STATIONUM  
QUAS ROMANI IPSI IN EA INSULA ÆDIFICAVERUNT  
LIBER PRIMUS.

---

CAPUT I.

1. FINIS erat orbis ora Gallici littoris, nisi Brittania insula, non qualibet amplitudine, nomen pene orbis alterius mereretur; octingentis enim et amplius millibus passuum longa porrigitur, ita ut eam in Caledonicum usque promuntorium metiamur. 2. Veteres Britanniam, ab albis rupibus, primum Albionem, postea, vocabulo gentis suæ, Britanniam cognominaverunt, cum Brittanicæ vocarentur omnes de quibus mox paulo dicemus. 3. Inter septentriones et occidentem locata est, Germaniæ, Galliæ, Hispaniæ, maxumis Europæ partibus magno intervallo adversa, oceano Athlantico clauditur. 4. Habet ipsa Brittania a meridie Galliam Belgicam, cujus proximum littus transmeantibus civitas aperit, quæ Rhutupis portus dicitur: hic abest à Gessoriaco Morinorum, Brit-



tanicæ gentis portu, trajectu millium L. sive, ut quidam scripsere, stadiorum CCCCL. illine conspiciuntur Brittones, quos

“—penitus toto divisos orbe—”

canit Virgilius Maro in *Eclogis*. 5. Agrippa, vetus orbis descriptor, latitudinem ejus CCC. m. p. credit. Beda vero rectius CC. exceptis duntaxat prolixioribus diversorum promuntiorum tractibus, quibus efficitur ut circuitus ejus quadragies octies septuaginta quinque millia passuum compleat. Marcianus, author Græcus, mecum MDIIOCLXXV. milliaria habet.

## CAPUT II.

1. ALBION, quæ Brittania Magna a Chrysosthomo auctore Græco dicitur, natura, ut refert Cæsar, triquetra et Siciliæ maxime similis est; cujus unum latus est contra Galliam Celticam, hujus lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, ad orientem solem; inferior, qui est ad Ocrinum promuntorium apud Damnonos, ad meridiem et Hispaniam Tarraconensem spectat. Hoc latus tenet circiter millia passuum D. 2. Alterum latus vergit ad Hyberniam et occidentem solem; hujus est longitudo lateris, ut fert veterum opinio, DCC. m. p. 3. Tertium est contra septentriones, cui parti nulla est objecta terra præter insulas; sed ejus angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam Magnam spectat; huic a Novanto Chersoneso per Taixolorum regionis angulum Cantium promuntorium usque millia passuum DCCC. in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnes insulam computabant in circuitu vicies centena millia passuum, sed errant, nam a Cantio Ocrinum usque m. p. est distantia CCCC. inde Novantum M. deinde Cantium MMCC. totius insulæ circuitus, ut supra, MMMCCCCC. millia passuum est. 4. Formam

totius Britanniæ Livius et Fabius Rusticus, veterum doctissimi authores, oblongæ scutulæ vel bipenni assimilare; et, ut annalium conditor Tacitus, est ea facies citra Caledoniam unde et in universam fama est transgressa; sed immensum et enorme spatium procurrentium extremo jam littore terrarum, velut in cuneum tenuatur. Sed Cæsar, inclutissimus dictator, cum Mela Romanorum nobili scriptore, pluribus eam triquetra dixerit similem: de quo supra. 5. Si Ptolemæo, orbis terrarum descriptori egregio, aliisque, coævis illi scriptoribus habenda fides, litteram Z, sed inversam, repræsentat hæc insula, nec tamen ex omni parte exacte quadrare hoc simile sufficienter præbet recentiori ævo descriptorum mapparum inspectio. Triquetra tamen figura soli Angliæ quodammodo videtur conveniens.

### CAPUT III.

1. CÆTERUM Britanniam qui mortales initio coluerint, indigenæ an advecti, ut inter nationes cæteras, parum compertum. Solis quippe Judæis, et per ipsos finitimis quibusdam gentibus, hoc contigit felicitatis, ut a primo inde mundi exordio gentis suæ originem continua serie ex infallibilibus deducere possint monumentis. 2. Habitus corporum varii, atque ex eo argumenta: namque rutulæ Caledoniam habitantium comæ, magni artus, Germanicam originem asseverant; Silurum colorati vultus, et torti plerumque crines, et positu contra Hispaniam, ut author est Tacitus, Iberos veteres trajecisse, easque et in Hybernia sedes occupasse fidem faciunt. Proximi Gallis et similes sunt, seu durante originis vi, seu procurrentibus in diversa terris, positio cœli corporibus habitum dedit. 3. Hic, si luberet indulgere fabulis, notare possem Venetos ope commercii navalis incolas religionisque his terris primum intulisse; imo non desunt



scriptores qui Herculem huc quoque pervenisse, regnumque constituisse, referunt: his vero tam alte reconditis antiquitatibus, fabulis hinc inde refertis, immorari vix operæ pretium videtur. 4. In universum tamen estimanti, Gallos vicinum solum occupasse credibile est: eorum sacra deprehendas, superstitionum, ait Tacitus, persuasionem; sermo haud multum diversus: pro ulteriori signo inservit Druidum traditio, una cum nominibus civitatum, quæ vero omnes iis nominibus appellabantur, quibus gentes, ortæ ex Galliæ civitatibus, quæ eo pervenerunt, atque agros colere ceperunt. 5. Hominum est, inquit Cæsar, infinita multitudo, creberrimaque ædificia, fere Gallicis consimilia, pecora sine número. 6. Omnium tamen humanissimi, qui Britanniam austrinam incolebant, neque multum a Gallis differebant consuetudine; ultiores plerique frumenta non ferebant, sed lacte, fructu, et carne vivebant, lanæ iis usus ac vestium ignotus erat, et quanquam continuis frigoribus utebantur pellibus, tamen cervinis aut ovinis vestiti erant, et lavabantur in fluminibus. 7. Omnes vero se Brittones olim vitro infererunt, quod cœruleum efficit colorem, atque, refert Cæsar, hoc horribiliore sunt in pugna adspectu: capilloque sunt, ut ait Romanorum dux, promisso, atque omni parte corporis rasa præter caput et labrum superius. 8. Uxores habebant Brittones deni duodenique inter se communes, et maxumę fratres cum fratribus, parentes cum liberis; sed, si qui erant ex his nati, eorum habebantur liberi, a quibus primum virgines quæque ductæ erant. Sua quemque mater uberibus alit, nec ancillis nec nutricibus delectantur. 9. Utebantur aut nummo æreo, aut annulis ferreis, ad certum pondus examinatis, pro nummis, ut author est Cæsar Dictator. 10. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare Brittones fas non putabant, hæc tamen alebant animi voluptatisque causa. 11. Erant autem margaritæ, frena heburnea, et armillæ, et electrina atque vitrea vasa, et gagates lapides, et, quod cæteris excellit, stannum, magna copia merces.



12. Utebantur et navibus, quarum carinæ primum ac statumina ex levi materia fiebant, reliquum corpus navium ambitus viminibus contextus coriis bubulorum integebatur. Quantocunque tempore cursus tenebant, ut author est Solinus, navigantes, escis abstinent.

*De Re Militari Brittonum.*

13. Fert ipsa Brittania populos regesque populorum, ut Mela lib. III. scripsit: sed sunt inculti omnes, atque ut longius a continenti absunt, ita aliarum opum ignari, magis tantum pecore ac finibus dites; causas autem et bella contrahunt, ac se frequenter invicem infestant, maxime imperitandi cupidine studioque ea prolatandi, quæ possident: solitum quidem, Brittones foeminarum ductu bellasse, neque sexum in imperiis discrevisse. 14. Dimicabant Brittones non solum equitatus peditatusque modo, sed etiam bigis et curribus, Gallice armati: covinos, essedas vero, more vulgari, vocabant, quorum falcatis axibus utebantur. 15. Equitum genus est, iis, quum est usus, atque aliquod bellum incidit, ut Cæsar est author, quod ante Romanorum adventum fere quotannis accidere solebat, uti aut ipsi injurias inferrent, aut illatas propulsarent: omnes in bello versantur, atqui eorum, ut quisque est genere copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ambactos clientesque habet: hanc unam gratiam potentiamque noverunt. 16. In peditate erat Brittonum robur, præliantur autem telis et ingentibus gladiis et brevibus cetris. Erant Brittonum gladii, ut ait Tacitus, sine mucrone. 17. Genus hoc erat ex essedis pugnae, ut Cæsar in IV. narrat. Primo per omnes partes perequitant, et tela conjiciunt; ac ipso terrore equorum, et strepitu rotarum, ordines plerumque perturbant: et quum se inter equitum turmas insinuavere, ex essedis desiliunt, et pedibus dispari prælio contendunt. Aurigæ interim paululum e prælio excedunt, atque ita se collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant: ita mobilitatem equitum,



stabilitatem peditum in proeliis præstant ; ac tantum usu quotidiano, et exercitatione efficiunt, ut in declivi ac præcipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere, et brevi moderari, ac flectere, et per temonem percurrere, et in iugo insistere, et inde se in currus citissime recipere consueverint. 18. Equestris autem proelii ratio, et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut nunquam conferti, sed rari, magnisque intervallis, proeliarentur, stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent ; integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent. Utebantur et telis. 19. Formam regiminis Brittanici, ante advectos in hanc insulam Romanos, determinare haud facile : hoc certum, quod nullum ibi ante hæc tempora Monarchici imperii vestigium, sed Democraticum fuisse potius videtur, nisi forte Aristocratiam æmulari videatur. Druidum in rebus maximi momenti autoritas non exigua. Commemorantur quidem in antiquissimis eorum monumentis principes nonnulli ; hi vero brevioris plerumque imperii, nec, nisi ingruente eximio quodam periculo et more dictatorum Romanorum ex tempore creati videntur. Nec desunt inter ipsos, apud alias fortes gentes rarissima exempla, electi ab illis in futurum antesignanum ipsius hostium duces, ut pro illis in posterum militaret, quem nuper hostem habuerant. 20. Proceritate corporis Gallos æque ac Romanos vincunt Brittones, ita ut visos sibi Romæ juvenes nondumque adultos Brittones, Strabo philosophus, orbis terræ descriptor antiquissimus, affirmet, qui solitam Gallorum Romanorumque staturam non levi momento excedebant. 21. Ditiores australis Britanniæ incolæ aureo digitorum sinistrae medio annulo ornare in more habuerunt, aurea vero e collo suspensa torques a vilioris conditionis hominibus discernebat optimum eminentiores. Septentrionales vero (hi veteres erant regni indigenæ) vestium usus sicuti ac a longo inde tempore avi abavique, tantum non ignari, ventrem et cervicem ferreo cingunt, ut fert Herodianus, nobilis



Græcorum scriptor, annulo; ornamentum id esse ac divitiarum argumentum existimantes, accedente in usum potius quam ornatum scuto angusto, et lancea, gladioque e nudis et pictis corporibus dependente. Loricam interim galeamque, futura nempe paludes transeuntibus impedimento, rejiciunt atque contemnunt. 22. Inter cætera autem fuit et hoc Brittanicæ consuetudinis, ut viatores et mercatores etiam invitos consistere cogèrent, et quod quisque eorum de una alterave re apud externos memorabile audierit, aut cognoverit, quærerent, et mercatores peregre advenientes in oppidis vulgus circumstiteret; quibus ex regionibus veniant, quasque ibi res cognoverint, pronunciare cogentes. His rumoribus atque auditionibus permoti, de summis sæpe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos e vestigio pœnitere necesse est, quum incertis rumoribus serviant, et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondeant. 23. Funera eorum sunt magnifica et sumptuosa, omniaque, quæ vivis cordi fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam arma et animalia. Sepulchrum tumulus *ex* cespitibus erigit.

## CAPUT IV.

1. NATIO Brittonum fuit omnis, ut Gallorum, admodum dedita religionibus; atque ob eam causam qui gravioribus affecti morbis, quique in præliis periculisque versabantur, aut pro victimis homines immolabant, aut se immolaturos vovebant. 2. Ad peragenda crudelia hæc sacra, druidum utebantur ministerio; nec credebant placari posse Deos, nisi hominis cædes humano sanguine pensaretur. Hinc instituta publice istiusmodi sacrificia, oblataque, ut gratissima Diis hostia, qui in furto, latrocinio, aliave graviore culpa deprehensi, his vero deficientibus, ad innocentium quoque mactationem descendebant, ut quocunque demum modo Dii plac-



rentur. 3. Nisi adfuerint Druides, res sacra rite celebrari non credebatur: hinc publica non minus quam privata sacra procurandi negotium illis unice incumbabat. Erat penes hoc religionis cura, æque ac mysteriorum interpretatio, corporis quoque et sanitatis sive tuendæ, sive restituendæ curam habebant, continuo medicinæ peritissimi. 4. Inter deos ipsis præcipue colebatur Mercurius, cujus plurima prostabant simulachra, post hunc Justitiam (qui Brittonibus Adraste dicebatur), hinc Apollinem, Martem (qui etiam Vitucadrus appellabatur). Jovem, Minervam, Herculem, Victoriam (Andatem vocatam), Dianam, Cybelem et Plutonium venerabantur, eandem fere de his numinibus ac quidem aliæ gentes opinionem amplexi. 5. A Dite autem, ut et Galli, gentis suæ originem deducere allaborabant Brittones. Antiquissimam hanc venditantes Druidum traditionem, eam ob causam quælibet temporum spatia, non dierum, sed noctium numero definiebant, dieique mensis et anni natalis initia ita numerare consueverunt, ut capto a nocte initio dies subsequeretur; quæ consuetudo omnino convenit cum antiquissima illa, quæ Gen. I. habetur noctium ac dierum computatione. 6. Ad Druides magnus disciplinæ causa confluebat adolescentium numerus; hi quippe in magno erant apud ipsos honore, nam fere de omnibus controversiis, publicis privatisque, constituébant, et si quod admissum erat facinus, si cædes facta, si de hæreditate, de finibus controversia erat, iidem decernebant: præmia pœnasque constituerunt, si quis aut privatus aut publicus eorum decreto non stetit, sacrificiis interdicebant; hæc exclusionis pœna apud eos erat gravissima. Quibus ita interdictum, ii numero impiorum ac sceleratorum habebantur: iis omnes decedebant, aditum eorum sermonemque defugientes, ne quid ex contagione incommodi acciperent: neque iis petentibus jus reddebatur, neque honos habebatur ullus. 7. His autem omnibus Druidibus præerat unus, qui summam inter eos potestatem habe-



bat et auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, successor dabatur, qui inter reliquos excellebat dignitate; at si plures essent dignitate pares, suffragio Druidum res committebatur; nonnunquam etiam de principatu armis contendebant. 8. Druides à bello abesse solebant, neque tributa una cum reliquis pendebant, militiæ vacationem, omniumque rerum habebant immunitatem; tantis excitati præmiis, et sua sponte, multi in disciplinam conveniebant, et a propinquis parentibusque mittebantur. 9. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ediscere solebant, quod unicum apud eos memoriæ et annalium genus: itaque nonnulli annos vicanos in disciplina permanebant, neque fas esse existimarunt eam litteris mandare, quum tamen in reliquis fere rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Græcis litteris uterentur. “Id mihi duabus de causis,” inquit D. Julius, “instituisse videntur; quod neque in vulgus disciplinam efferri velint; neque eos, qui discunt, litteris confisos, minus memoriæ studere; quod fere plerisque accidit, ut præsidio litterarum, diligentiam in perdiscendo, ac memoriam remittant.” 10. Inprimis hoc persuadere allaborabant, non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios; atque hoc maxime ad virtutem excitari putabant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa præterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi et terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de Deorum vi ac potestate disputabant, et juventuti tradebant sollicite. 11. Non est omittenda de visco admiratio: nihil habebant Druides visco et arbore in qua gignatur (si modo sit robur) sacratius. Jam per se roborum eligebant lucos, nec ulla sacra sine ea fronde conficiebant; ut inde appellati quoque interpretatione Græca possint *Δρυιδες* (Druides) videri. Enimvero quicquid adnascatur illis, e cœlo missum putabant, signumque esse electæ ab ipso Deo arboris. Est autem id rarum admodum inventu, et repertum magna religione petitur, et ante omnia sexta luna, quæ principium mensium annorumque bis facit, et seculi, post tricesimum



annum; quia jam virium abunde habebat, nec tamen sit sui dimidia. Omnia sanantem appellantes suo vocabulo. Sacrificio epulisque rite sub arbore præparatis, duos admovebant candidi coloris tauros, quorum cornua tunc primum vinciantur. Sacerdos candida veste cultus arborem scandebat, falce aurea dimetiens; candido id excipiebatur sago: tunc demum victimas immolant, præcantes, ut suum donum Deus prosperum faceret. His, quibus dederant, fœcunditatem eo potò dari cui-cunque animali sterili arbitrabantur, contraque venena omnia esse remedio: tanta gentium in rebus frivolis plerumque religio fuerat! 12. Druidarum disciplina in nostra Brittania reperta, atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur: unde Plinius eleganter declamat lib. XXX. his verbis: "Sed quid ego hæc commemorem in arte oceanum quoque transgressa, et ad naturæ inane pervecta? Brittania hodieque eam attonite celebrat tantis ceremoniis, ut dedisse Persis videri possit:" idem Julius Cæsar affirmat in Ephemeridis: "Et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque illo, discendi caussa, proficiscuntur." 13. Druides certo anni tempore in finibus Britanniæ, in insulæ Monæ luco consecrato, considebant; huc omnes undique, quos inter controversia, conveniebant, eorumque judiciis decretisque acquiescebant. 14. Præter Druides apud Gallos atque Brittones erant bardi poetæ, qui Deum Heroumque res gestas, heroicis expositas versibus, cum dulcibus lyræ modulis cantitabant. 15. De his ambobus ita cecinit Lucanus vates his versibus, quibus hoc caput finiam:

"Vos quoque, qui fortes animas, belloque peremptas  
 Laudibus in longum, vates! dimittitis ævum,  
 Plurima securi fudistis carmina bardi.  
 Et vos barbaricos ritus, moremque sinistrum  
 Sacrorum, druidæ, positis repetistis ab armis.  
 Solis nosse Deos, et cœli numina vobis,  
 Aut solis nescire datum: nemora alta remotis  
 Incolitis lucis. Vobis authoribus, umbræ  
 Non tacitas Erebi sedes, Ditisque profundi

Pallida regna petunt ; regit idem spiritus artus  
 Orbe alio : longæ, canitis (si cognita) vitæ  
 Mors media est. Certe populi, quos despicit Arctos,  
 Felices errore suo, quos ille timorum  
 Maxumus, haud urget Lethi metus : inde ruendi  
 In ferrum mens prona viris, animæque capaces  
 Mortis ; et ignavum redituræ parcere vitæ."

## CAPUT V.

1. OPIMA frugibus atque arboribus insula, et alendis apta pecoribus ac jumentis ; vineas etiam quibusdam in locis germinans. Sed et avium ferax terra marique generis diversi ; fluviis quoque multum piscosis, ac fontibus præclara copiosis, et quidem præcipue isicio abundat et anguilla. 2. Capiuntur autem sæpissime et vituli marini, et delphines, nec non et balænæ, de quo apud Satyricum mentionem inveniamus :

" Quanto delphinis balæna Britannica major ? "

3. Exceptis autem variorum generibus conchyliorum, in quibus sunt et muscoli, quibus inclusam sæpe margaritam omnis quidem coloris optimam inveniunt, id est, et rubicundi, et purpurei, et hyacinthini, et prasini, sed maxime candidi, ut scripsit venerabilis Beda in prima Eccl. Hist. ad Regem Colfulsum. 4. Sunt et cochleæ, satis superque abundantes, quibus tinctura coccinei coloris conficitur, cujus rubor pulcherrimus, nullo unquam solis ardore, nulla valet pluviarum injuria pallescere ; sed quo vetustior est, eo solet esse venustior. 5. Habet fontes salinarum et fontes calidos, et ex eis fluvios balnearum calidarum, omni ætati et sexui per distincta loca, juxta suum cuique modum accommodatos. 6. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum ; sed ejus exigua est copia ; ære utuntur importato ; gignit et aurum, et argentum.



Fert et lapidem gagatem plurimum optimumque; est autem nigrogemmeus et ardens igni admotus, incensus serpentes fugat, adtritu calefactus adplicita detinet æque ut succinum. 7. Et quia Britannia prope sub septentrionali vertice mundi jacet, lucidas æstate noctes habet; ita ut medio sæpe tempore noctis in questionem veniat intuentibus, utrum crepusculum adhuc permaneat vespertinum, an jam advenerit matutinum? utpote nocturno sole non longe sub terris ad orientem boreales per plagas redeunte. Unde etiam plurimæ longitudinis habet dies æstate, sicut et noctes contra in bruma, sole nimirum tunc in Lybicas partes secedente, id est, horarum X. et VIII., ut author est Cleomedes: plurimæ item brevitatis noctes æstate et dies habet in bruma, hoc est, VI. solummodo æquinoctialium horarum: cum in Armenia, Macedonia, Italia, cæterisque ejusdem lineæ regionibus, longissima dies sive nox XV., brevissima VIIII., compleat horas. 8. Sed de Britannia Britonibusque in genere satis prolixè commemoravi. Res ipsa requirit ad particularia tandem descendere, atque, in sequentibus, statum fatumque diversarum, quæ hanc insulam incoluerunt, nationum, quæ eandem nobilitarunt, civitates, *cet.* quales sub ditione Romana erant, ex ordine depingere mei jam erit propositi.

## CAPUT VI.

1. BRITANNIA, secundum accuratissima veterum, quæ propius fidem sunt, monumenta, erat omnis divisa in partes septem; quarum sex alio atque alio tempore imperio Romano adjectæ fuerunt, septima vero sub solis barbaris Caledoniis. 2. Supra dictæ Britannię partes erant Britannia Prima, Secunda, Flavia, Maxima, Valentia, et Vespasiana, quarum ultima non diu stetit in manibus Romanorum. Ex his Britanniam Primam a Flavia Thamesis flumen, a Britannia Secunda mare dividit. Flavia ini-

tium capit a Mari Germanico, continetur Thamesi fluvio, Sabrina a finibus Silurum Ordovicumque, vergit ad septemtriones et Brigantum regionem. Maxima ab extremis Flaviæ finibus oritur, pertinet ad inferiorem partem Muri, qui totam ex transverso percurrit insulam, spectatque in septemtriones. Spatium inter ambos, hunc et alium qui ab imperatore Antonino Pio, inter Bdoram et Clyddam exstructus est, Murum, occupat Valentiana. Vespasiana autem a Bdoræ æstuario ad civitatem Alcluith, unde linea ad ostium fluminis Vararis ducta terminos ostendit. Secunda ad eam partem oceani, quæ ad Hyberniam pertinet, spectat inter occasum et septemtriones. Sed de provinciis satis. 3. Necessarium vero ducimus, antequam ad accuratiorem nos conferamus descriptionem, regiminis in hisce provinciis constitutionem paucis attingere. Deprehendimus adeoque totam, antiquissimis temporibus, plurium regulorum statuumque arbitrio divisim paruisse Britanniam, quorum nonnulli, etiam post occupatam a Romanis provinciam, superfuisse commemorantur; sed vix umbra regis dignitatis istis principibus relicta, contrarium nempe dissuadente politica illa, qua Romani olim, præ cultissimis etiam quibusque gentibus, inclaruerunt prudentia. Victricibus Romanorum armis subjugatæ imperatoria auctoritate constitutus præerat Legatus, ipsa Brittannia vero provincia erat proconsularis. Per plures hæc imperii constitutio duravit ætates; licet in plures interim ipsa insula divisa fuerit partes; primum nempe in Superiorem et Inferiorem, deinceps vero, uti antea demonstravimus, in septem dispertita provincias, mutata regiminis forma: deinde diu paruit, ut imperatoria sedes, hæc insula Carausio, eisque quos in societatem adsciverat tyrannis. Gloria et præsidium Christianismi, Constantinus Magnus, creditur Maximam et Valentiam Consulares, Primam, Secundam, et Flaviam Præsidiales, fecisse. Toti vero insulæ præpositus est Vicarius, vir perspicabilis, sub dispositione viri illustris Domini



Præfecti Prætorii Galliæ; præter quem in vetusto quodam volumine circa eadem tempora commemoratur aliquis eximiæ dignitatis vir, titulo Comitis Britanniarum insignis, alius itidem, Comes littoris Saxonici, tertius præterea Dux Britanniae dictus, aliique plures, magnis præfecti muneribus, quæ, cum distincta eorum notitia, injuria temporis, impetrari non potuerit, cogimur taciti præterire. 4. Prolixum nunc tandem iter ingredior, totam non minus insulam, quam singulas ejus partes curiosa lustraturus indagine, pressurusque optimorum in hoc negotio authorum vestigia. Fiat vero ab extrema Primæ provinciæ ora initium, cujus littora Galliæ obji-ciuntur. Tres vero laudatissimos validissimosque status, Cantianum nempe, Belgicum, et Dammonicum, complectitur hæc provincia, de quibus ea, qua fieri poterit, cura nobis sigillatim agendum. Cantium primo lustremus. 5. Ad extremam Britanniae Primæ orientalem oram remotam Cantium, Cantiis quondam habitatum, civitatibus Durobrobi et Cantiopoli, quæ eorum metropolis; hic sepultus est D. Augustinus Anglorum apostolus: Dubræ, Lemanus, et Regulbium, præsidio a Romanis munita, eorumque primarium Rhutupi, deducta eo colonia, metropolis factum, portusque classi Romanorum, quæ oceano septentrionali dominabatur, recipiendæ factus idoneus. Tanti nominis fuit hæc civitas, ut littora vicina ex ea dicta sint Rhutupina, de quibus Lucanus poeta:

“ Aut vaga cum Thetis Rhutupinaque littora fervent.”

Inde quoque ingentia et grati saporis ostrea Romam translata, ut author est Juvenalis Satyricus his verbis:

“ ————— Circaeis nata forent, an  
Lucrinum ad saxum, Rhutupinove edita fundo  
Ostrea, callebat primo deprendere morsu.”

Statio etiam fuit, sub dispositione viri spectabilis Comitæ littoris Saxonici, legionis secundæ Augustæ. 6. Quam plurimis hoc Cantiorum regnum fluminibus rigatur,

quorum celebriora, Madus, Sturius, Dubris, et Lemanus, qui Cantios a Bibrocis discernibat. 7. Inter tria ista præcipua Britanniae promontoria, eminet illud, quod a Cantio nomen habet: ibi oceanus in angulum quasi redactus, cursum ita promovet fluxionemque suam, donec, ut veteres tradunt, fretum istud oceani, quod jam Britanniae format insulam, effecerit. 8. A Cantio, vasta illa quæ Anterida nonnullis, aliis Caledonia dicta sylva, late extenditur ad CL. milliaria per Bibrocorum ac Segontiacorum terras, ad Heduorum usque fines excurrens. De hac sylva ita cecinit Lucanus:

“ Unde Caledoniis fallit turbata Britannos.”

9. Cantiis proximi, et, ut putant nonnulli, subjecti, Bibroci, qui et aliis Rhemi dicuntur; natio in monumentis non penitus ignota, quibus habitatum Bibroicum, Regentium, Noviomagumque metropolis. Anderidam vero occupatam tenuerunt Romani. 10. Confines illis apud ripam Thamesis habitabant Attrebates, quorum urbs primaria Caleba. 11. Infra hos, propius flumen Cunetium, habitabant Segontiaci, quorum caput fuit Vindonum. 12. Ad oceanum, Bibrocis affines, inferius habitabant, sic dicti, Belgæ, quorum urbes primariæ Clausentum, quod nunc Sotheamptona dicitur, Portus Magnus, omniumque præcipua Venta, nobilissima civitas ad flumen Antonam sita. Sorbiodunum vero tenebat præsidium Romanorum. Omnes enim Belgæ Allobroges sunt, et suam a Celtis Belgisque originem traxere: hi, non multis ante Cæsaris adventum in hanc insulam seculis, relictæ patriæ, Gallia, a Germanorum Romanorumque populis infestata, atque devicta; illi, qui, trajecto flumine Rheni, eorum expugnatas occupavere regiones, de quo autem prolixius M. Dictator Cæsar, sedem hic sibi elegerunt. 13. Omnes regiones quæ Thamesi, versus meridiem, adjacent, olim, uti vetera monumenta declarant, a bellicosa Senonum gente fuerunt occupatæ; qui, sub ductu et auspicio decantatissimi regis Brenni,



peragrata Gallia, Alpibusque, adhuc inviis, sibi patefactis, Romam fastu elatam ista incursione vastam solo facile æquassent, nisi Rempublicam Romanam, quam more nutricis in sinu quasi gestare (dum infra destinatum ab illis fastigium agebat) videbantur Fata, cladem aversura Manlium clangore anseris excitassent, qui, circa montem unum pendentes, et nocte subeuntes, barbaros a summo Capitolio dejecit. Huic eadem Numinum cura Camillum postea auxilio misit, qui abeuntes a tergo aggressus ita cecidit, ut Senonici sanguinis inundatione omnia incendiorum vestigia deleret, urbemque ita ruinæ proximam ab interitu vindicaret. Senones autem ob valentissimam hanc expeditionem natale solum, ut cultoribus vacuum, ita præda refertissimum, alienæ genti, quam Belgas supra nominatos fuisse satis liquet, concesserunt. 14. Ad Sabrinam, Thamesi inferius, habitabant Hedui, urbes eorum Ischalis et Avalonia. Thermæ, quæ et Aquæ Solis nuncupabantur, Romanorum, qui hanc Britanniae oram tenebant, factæ colonia et perpetua sedes; urbs nominatissima hæc erat, ad flumen Abonam sita, ibique fontes calidi, opiparo exsculpti apparatu, ad usus mortaliū; quibus fontibus præsules erant Apollinis et Minervæ Numina, in quorum ædibus perpetui ignes nunquam labascunt in favillas, sed ubi ignis tabuit vertitur in globos saxeos. 15. Infra Heduorum terras siti erant Durotriges, qui et Morini alias vocantur. Metropolin habebant Durinum et promontorium Vindeliā. In horum finibus sensim coaretatur Britannia, et immensum efformare videtur brachium, quod irruptionem minitantem commode repellit oceanum. 16. In hoc brachio, quæ, intermissione Uxellæ amnis, Heduorum regioni protenditur, sita erat regio Cimbrorum. Utrumne vero modernum Walliæ nomen dederint, an vero antiquior sit Cimbrorum origo, non æque constat. Urbes illis præcipuæ Termolus et Artavia. Visuntur hic, antiquis sic dictæ, Herculis columnæ, et non procul hinc insula Herculeā.

Sed a fluminis Uxellæ finibus continuum procurrit montium jugum, cui nomen Ocrinum, extremumque ejus ad promontorium ejusdem nominis extenditur. 17. Ultra Cimbros extremum insulæ angulum incolebant Carnabii, unde forsitan, quod hodieque retinet nomen, obtinuit Carnubia. Urbes habebant Musidum et Halangium: cum vero has olim desertas propemodum et incultas Britanniae partes Romani nunquam salutaverint, minoris omnino momenti urbes eorum fuisse videntur, et historicis propterea neglectæ; geographis tamen memorantur promontoria Bolerium et Antivestæum. 18. Memoratis modo populis in littore oceani austrum versus affines ad Belgas-Allobroges sedem habebant Damnonii, gens omnium validissima, quæ ratio movisse videtur Ptolemæum, ut totum hunc terræ tractum, qui in mare brachii instar prætenditur, illis adscripserit. Urbes habebant Uxellam, Tamaram, Volubam, Ceniam, omniumque matrem Iscam, fluvio cognomini imminentem. Fluvii apud ipsos præcipui memorati modo Isca, Durius, Tamarus, atque Cenius. Ora eorum maritima promontoria exhibet tria, de quibus mox paulo dicemus. Hanc regionem, utpote metallis abundantem, Phœnicibus, Græcis, et Gallis mercatoribus probe notam fuisse constat: hi enim ob magnam quam terra ferebat stanni copiam eo sua frequenter extendebant negotia; cujus rei præcipua sunt documenta supra nominata tria promontoria, Helenis scilicet, Ocrinum, et *Κριῦ μέτωπον*, ut et nomina civitatum, Græcam Phœniciamque originem redolentia. 19. Ultra brachium in oceano sitæ sunt insulæ Sygdiles, quæ etiam Æstrominides et Cassiterides vocabantur, dictæ. 20. Cum prænominatis Damnoniis Belgisque conjunctis XXX. prœlia commisisse narratur valentissimus ille imperator Vespasianus. Decem hi ad australes Thamesis et Sabrinæ ripas habitantes populi, a Romanis sensim subacti, eorumque regiones in provinciæ formam redactæ, quæ Britannia Prima fuit appellata, cum hic fuerit in istis terris pri-



mus Romanorum victoriæ fructus. 21. Succedit ordine Britannia Secunda, quæ a prioribus, interfluente Sabrina amne, discernitur : a provincia autem Flavia, tum memoratus amnis, tum Deva fluvius eandem sejungit, reliquum cingitur a mari interno. Hæc erat celebrata illa regio Silurum, tribus validissimis habitata populis, quos inter præ reliquis celebres Silures, proprie sic dicti, quam ab ora relictâ turbidum Sabrinæ fretum distinguit : cujus homines, ut eruditissimus Solinus est author, etiam nunc custodiunt morem vetustum, nundinas ac nummum refutant, dant res et accipiunt ; mutationibus necessaria potius quam pretiis parant. Deos percolunt, scientiam futurorum pariter viri ac fœminæ ostendunt. 22. Civitates Silurum, Sariconium, Magna, Gobaneum, et Venta eorum caput, fuerunt. Iscæ vero, flumini imminentem urbem cognominem, tenebat Romanorum colonia, ibique per annos plures secunda legio, quæ Augusta alias vocabatur, stationem habebat, donec Valentiam et Rhutupin transferebatur. Hæc erat provinciæ Secundæ primaria Romana. 23. Olim ac diu potens erat hæc Silurum regio, sed, cum eam regno Charaticus tenuit, longe potentissima : hic continuis novem annis, omnia Romanorum arma pro ludibrio habita, sæpe evertit, donec de illo, conjunctis viribus Romanos aggressuro, triumphavit Legatus Ostorius. Charaticus enim, prælio evadens, auxiliumque a vicinis regibus petens, per astutiam matronæ Romanæ Carthismanduæ cum rege Brigantiæ Venutio nuptæ, Romanis deditus est. Post id temporis mascule tantum suam ipsius ditionem idem ille populus defendit, usque dum a Varionio spoliatus, ac tandem a Frontino devictus, in formam Romanæ, cui Britannia Secunda, ut supra meminimus, nomen erat, provinciæ suum redigi pateretur imperium. 24. Duæ aliæ sub Siluribus gentes fuere, primum Ordovices, qui in septentrionali versus insulam Monam ; et deinde Dimeciæ, qui in extrema versus occidentem parte degebant, ubi promonto-

rium quod Octorupium nuncupatur, unde in Hyberniam transitus XXX. milliarium. Dimeciarum urbes Menapia, et primaria Muridunum. Lovantium vero sibi habitandum vendicaverant Romani. Ultra hos et Silurum terminos siti Ordovices, quorum urbes Mediolanum et Brannogenium. Sabrina in montibus illorum oriunda, majoribus tribus Britanniae fluviis merito accensetur, addito nempe Thamesi et Tavo. Elucet imprimis in historia nomen Ordovicum ob sumtam de inclutissimi ipsorum regis captivitate vindictam. Hinc enim toties redactum in angustias exercitum Romanorum tam misere vexarunt, ut de illorum fere imperio in hac regione actum fuisset, ni in tantæ cladis vindictam postea surrexisset dux Agricola, qui, victricia circumferens arma, totam quoque hanc gentem subjugavit, maximamque partem ferro delevit. 25. Huc quoque referendum illud, quod a septentrione Ordovicum situm, ab oceano alluitur, territorium, cum illorum regimini aliquandiu fuerit subiectum; hoc certo constat, quod illum Cangiani quondam inhabitaverint tractum, quorum urbs unica Segontium, promontorio Cangano vicina. Incluta hæc erat civitas, freto Meneviaco, contra Monam, religiosissimam insulam, ubi olim druides habitare, adjacet. In hac insula plurima sita erant oppida, tota autem insula in circuitu LX. m. p. fere complectitur, atque, ut refert Plinius, a Camaloduno colonia CC. m. p. abest. Fluvii apud ipsos Tosibus, qui et Canovius; pro terminis vero erat utraque Deva. In hac vero regione mons Erii celsissimus maxumusque invenitur. Ordovicia una cum Cangiorum Carnabiorumque regionibus, ni fama me fallit, nomine Genaniæ, sub imperatoribus post Trajani principatum inclarescebat. 26. Ordo jam ad illam nos deducit provinciam, quæ Flavia Romanis vocata: unde vero hoc nomen acceperit, utrum a matre Constantini Magni Flavia Julia Helena, ex his terris oriunda? an vero a Romanorum familia Flavia? — quominus determinari possit, obstat injuria temporum, quæ nobis invidet ge-



nuina quæ huc facerent antiquitatis monumenta. 27. Ad fluvium Devam primo siti erant Carnabii, quibus habitatae fuerunt Benonæ, Etocetum, Banchorium (monasterium totius insulæ celeberrimum, quod, in contentione Augustini eversum, non postea resurrexit), et reliquarum mater Uriconium, quæ, inter Britanniae civitates maxumas, nomen possidebat. In extremo hujus terræ angulo flumini Devæ imminebat cognominis Romanorum colonia Deva, opus vicesimæ legionis, quæ Victrix dicebatur, et olim illius erat regionis tutela. Hæc eadem esse existimatur quæ jam *West-Chester* vocatur. 28. Infra nominatos regnum Cassium, a rege Ptolemæo Catieuchlani appellatum, extendebatur, aut respublica potius, quæ ex binis gentibus coaluerat. Harum, quæ Sabrinæ proxima vocabatur Dobuni, vel, ut Dio celeberrimus scriptor annalibus inseruit, Boduni. Apud hos oritur flumen Thamesis, et deinde longo spatio per fines Heduum, Attrebatum, Cassiorum, Bibrocorum, Trinobantum, et Cantiorum citatus fertur, et oceanum Germanicum influit. Urbes Dobunorum erant Salinæ, Branogena, ad sinistram Sabrinæ ripam, Alauna, et, cui reliquæ nomen laudemque debent, Corinum, urbs perspicabilis, opus, ut tradunt, Vespasiani ducis. Glevum vero, in extremo regni contra regionem Silurum situm, Romana tenebat colonia, quam deduxit Claudius Cæsar, ut scriptores de istis temporibus affirmant. Finitimi illis Cassii, quorum urbes Forum Dianæ et Verulamium: cum vero hæc ad municipiam dignitatem a Romanis evecta, ejus præ aliis urbibus eminentia illis omnino adscribenda. Hic natus erat D. Albanus Martyr. Hæc civitas ruina Camaloduni, Londiniique, in seditione a Bonduca excitata, cujus in annalibus mentionem facit eruditissimus Tacitus, involuta erat. Hi Cassii olim, præ ceteris insulæ gentibus, caput extulere, atque cum inclutissimo eorum rege Cassibellino (cui non paucae nationes fuere tributariæ) dictator Cæsar multos eosdemque gravissimos, sub readventum ipsius in hanc insulam, habuit conflictus; sed ab

eadem ille gente cum Siluribus conjuncta fugatus, unde et emendatissimus Lucanus :

“Territa quæsitis ostendit terga Britannis.”

Adventante autem ipso imperatore Claudio, omnes cum vicinis fracti sunt, eorumque regio in formam Romanæ provinciæ redacta, nomineque, Cæsariensis, et postea Flavia, nuncupata. 29. Juxta Cassios, ubi se oceano Thamesis propinquavit, regio Trinobantum sita erat; natio quæ non modo sponte in Romanorum concessit amicitiam, sed illis quoque, ut colonias ibi ponerent, metropolim suam Lundinum et Camalodunum ad mare sita obtulerunt. In hac urbe Flavia Julia Helena, piissima conjux Constantini Chlorig, materque Constantini Magni, e sanguine regum Britannicorum nasci memoriæ proditum dicunt. Prima autem hæc Romanorum in Britannia coloniarum erat, templo Claudii, imagine Victoriæ, cum aliis diversis ornamentis insignis. Lundinum enim mundo cognita civitas erat et erit. Primum Trinovantum, postea Londinium, dein Augusta, et nunc Londona rursum. Urbe Roma, secundum chronicorum fidem, sane antiquior est; super ripam Thamesis fluminis posita, et ipsa multorum emporium populorum terra marique venientium. Hæc a piissima illa imperatrice Helena, S. S. Crucis inventrice, circumvallata, atque, si fides sit penes traditiones, quæ non semper erroneæ sunt, nominata est Augusta; tota autem Britannia Romana Insula. 30. Limes huic populo ad septentrionem flumen SURIUS, ultra quem habitabant Icenii, celeberrima natio, in duas gentes divisa, quarum prior, Cenomanni habitans, ad septentrionem Trinobantes et Cassios, ad orientem oceanum spectabat. Horum urbes Durnomagus et caput regionis Venta. Romanorum colonia erat Camboricum; in mare orientem versus procurrens lingula dicitur Flavia Extrema. Fluminum notissima sunt Garion, SURIUS, et Aufona, in sinum Metorin sese exonerans. Ex altera parte ad Aufonam incolebant, Carnabiis Brigantibus, et



oceano vicini, Coitanni, in tractu sylvis obsito, qui, ut aliæ Britonum sylvæ, Caledonia fuit appellata. De hac autem III. mentionem facit historicus ille Florus. Civitas primaria Coitannorum erat Ragæ; et præter hanc Romanorum colonia Lindum, in extrema ad orientem provinciæ ora. Totam vero regionem bifariam secatur fluvius Trivona. Hæc Icenorum gens, quæ, utpote ferocissima bellicque post hominum memoriam studiosissima, omissis tam rusticis quam civilibus artibus, sua sponte in Romanorum societatem accesserat, non tantum mox defecerat, sed ad sui quoque imitationem alios quam plurimos excitaverat, ab Ostorio duce primum sub jugum missa est. Aliquot post annos, quum rex ipsorum, et animo et opibus valentissimus, Præsutagus moriens Cæsarem ejusdemque posteros heredes fecerat. Romani autem Icenorum sic abutentes amicitia, ut nulli non se luxuriæ dederint, ab iisdem postea sociisque, sub ductu bellicosissimæ Bonduicæ, viduæ regis supra nominati, ita infesti ipsis sunt redditæ, ut combustis deletisque ipsorum coloniis ac municipio, civium denique Romanorum LXXX. M. ferro misere sint trucidati; sed postea ad officium redegit Suetonius legatus, multis prudentiæ nominibus suspiciendus. 31. Ad septentrionalem hujus regionis plagam oceano occurrit fluvius Abus, quondam terminorum provinciæ Maximæ unus, uti alter Seteja. Dicta quoque hæc provincia fuit Brigantiæ Regnum, scilicet ejusdem nominis regionem complexa, tribusque habitata nationibus. In extrema orientali plaga, ubi promontoria Oxellum et Brigantum extrema in mare procurrunt, habitabant Parisii, quorum urbes Petuaria et Portus Felix. 32. Supra hos, uti et ad latus, siti erant proprie sic dicti Brigantes, gens numerosissima, toti olim provinciæ leges præscribens. His cultæ civitates, Epiacum, Vinovium, Cambodunum, Cataracton, Galacum, Olicana, et primaria Isurium. Eboracum vero, ad Urum fluvium, caput provinciæ; primum colonia nomine Sextæ a Romanis factum, sextæque deinde le-



gionis, quæ Victrix dicebatur, sedes ; deinceps vero plurimum imperatorum præsentia illustrior factum, municipii quoque auctum prærogativis. 33. Totam in æquales fere partes provinciam dividunt montes Alpes Penini dicti ; hi, ad Icenorum Carnabiorumque fines, ad fluvium Trivonam surgentes, continua serie per CL. milliaria septentrionem versus decurrunt. 34. Populi, ad occidentalem hujus jugi partem habitantes, sunt Volantii Sistuntique, arctiori ut videtur fœdere conjuncti. Urbes habebant Rerigonum, Coccium et Lugubalium, quarum tamen posteriores binas Romanorum tenebant præsidia. 35. Septentrionales hujus terræ limites tegebat murus iste stupendæ molis, a Romanis per isthmum ad longitudinem LXXX. milliarium extensus, cujus altitudo XII. crassities vero IIX. pedes æquabat, turribusque ornatus, murus erat. 36. Gentem hanc, ab imperatore Claudio primum infestatam, deinde ab Ostorio legato devictam, postea a Cereali fractam, et magnam partem debellatam, ex historia colligitur : cum vero sponte se Agricolaë dedisset, pacem illi datam esse percepimus. Famam hujus gentis in historiis præcipue delerunt turpia Reginæ ipsorum gesta inauditaque perfidia. Ipsa harum potentium nationum progenies erat, quæ novas electura sedes, ultimum ultro, patriæ, inter Alpes, Danubium, et Rhodanum jacenti, valedicebat. Ex his in Hyberniam postea nonnulli, sedem ibi fixuri, transierunt, ut ex documentis constat. 37. His borealiores erant nationes istæ validissimæ olim sub nomine Maëtarum venientes, a quibus, mortuo patre, fratricida iste Bassianus suam turpiter pacem emit. Regiones, quas tenuere, sequentes erant, in orientem Ottadinia, inde Gadenia, post hanc Selgovia, deinde Novantia, supra hos etiam Damnia. 38. Muro proximi habitabant Gadeni, quorum metropolis Curia. Ad oceanum vero propius siti Ottadini, eorumque caput Bremenium, ac apud hos fluvii Tueda, Alauna, et utraque Tina, infra murum decurrentes. 39. His occidentaliores ad Oceanum siti erant Selgovæ, eorumque urbes Corban-



torigum, Uxellum et Trimontium, quam tamen sat diu tenuit præsidium Romanorum, quod antiqua memorant monumenta. Hujus regionis fluvii præcipui fuerunt Novius, Deva, et, ex parte, Ituna. 40. Ultra Devam, nuper dictam, ad oceani quoque oram in extrema insulæ parte, Hyberniam versus, Novantes siti erant. Apud quos celebris illa Novantum Chersonesus, Hybernia distans milliaria XXVIII., hæc inter cuncta Britanniae promontoria maxime borea antiquis credebantur, juxta vero, æque ac illi, causam non video. Metropolis horum Lucophibia, alias Casæ candidæ; fluvii vero Abrasuanus, Jena, et, ad orientem regionis terminus, Deva. 41. Supra Novantes, Selgovas, et Gadenos, interveniente montium Uxellorum serie, habitabant Damnii, prævalens quidem natio; sed quæ condito muro non parvum regionis suæ tractum amisit, a Caledoniis subjugatum et spoliatum. Præter illud, quod murum tuebatur præsidium Vanduarium tenebat Romanus miles. 42. Hic Britannia, rursus quasi amplexu oceani delectata, angustior evadit, quam alibi, idque ob duo ista rapidissima quæ infunduntur æstuaria, Bodotriam scilicet et Clottam. Contractus hic isthmus ab Agricola legato primum præsidio munitus erat; alium murum, in historiis nobilissimum, erexit imperator Antoninus, ad XXXV. circiter milliaria protensum; ut hoc medio barbarorum sisteret incursiones, qui et ab Ætio duce demum reparatus est, undecimque firmatus turribus. Has vero regiones pro illa habeo provincia, quæ per victoriosam Romanorum aciem sub imperatore Theodosio revocata, atque in honorem imperatoris, tunc ad clavum imperii sedentis, Valentiana dicta putatur. 43. Extra murum sita provincia Vespasiana. Hæc est illa Caledonia regio, a Romanis nimium quantum et desiderata militibus, et incolis valde defensa; negotium, cujus amplam historiæ Romanæ, alias nimis de istiusmodi rebus silentes, mentionem faciunt. Hic fluvium Tavum conspicere licet, qui longo cursu regionem in duas quasi partes dissecare videtur.

Hic quoque arduum atque horrendum jugum Grampium offendimus, quod provinciam istam bifariam secabat. Atque hæc eadem erat regio, quæ, a commisso inter Agricolam et Galgacum prælio, Romanis utilissimo, famam in annalibus habet insignem. Hic vires eorum veteresque castrametationes hodieque magnitudo ostendit mœnium; nam in loco ubi ingens supradictum prælium habitum erat, quidam ordinis nostri, hanc viam emensi, affirmant se immania vidisse castra, aliaque argumenta Taciti relationem confirmantia. 44. Nationes vero, Romanis hic subjectæ, ordine jam sequuntur. Ultra isthmum, usque ad Tavum, gens erant Horestii, quorum urbes, post prætenturam quidem extructam, prius enim Damniis accensebantur, fuerunt Alauna, Lindum, et, re non minus quam nomine reliquis gloriosior, Victoria, ab Agricola ad flumen Tavum XX. milliaria ab ejusdem in mare exitu, ædificata, memoriæ proditum dicunt. 45. Supra hos ultra Tavum, qui limites constituit, erant Vecturones, sive Venricones, quorum urbs primaria Orrea, fluvii vero Æsica et Tina. 46. Oceani littus, ultra horum fines, accolebant Taixali, his urbium princeps Divana, fluvii autem Deva et Ituna. Pars Grampii montis, quæ, ut promontorium, late se in oceanum, quasi in Germaniæ occursum, extendit, ab illis nomen mutuatur. 47. His contermini ad occidentem, interveniente montium Grampiorum serie, exstiterunt Vacomagi, qui amplissimam regionem tenebant, quorum urbes Tuessis, Tamea, et Banatia. Romanorum autem statio, simulque provinciæ urbs primaria, erat, ad ostium fluvii Varar in littore situm, Ptoroton. Notiores hujus regionis fluvii præter Vararem, qui provinciam terminabat, fuerunt Tuesis et Celnus. 48. Infra Vacomagos Tavumque habitabant Damnii-Albani; gentes parum notæ, et intra lacuum montiumque claustra plane reconditæ. 49. Inferius adhuc Clottæ ripas accolebant Attacoti, gens toti aliquando olim Britanniae formidanda. Maxumus hic visitur lacus, cui nomen olim Lyncalidor, ad cujus ostium



condita a Romanis urbs Alcluith, brevi tempore a duce Theodosio nomen sortita, qui occupatam a barbaris provinciam recuperaverat: cum hac comparari potuit nulla, utpote quæ, post fractas cæteras circumjacentes provincias, impetum hostium ultimo sustinuit. 50. Hæc provincia dicta est, in honorem familiæ Flaviæ, cui suam Domitianus imperator originem debuit, et sub quo expugnata, Vespasiana. Et, ni fallor, sub ultimis imperatoribus nominata erat Thule, de qua Claudianus vates his versibus facit mentionem:

“ ——— incaluit Pictorum sanguine Thule,  
Scotorum cumulos flevit glacialis Hierne.”

Sed non tam diu sub aquila suoapte tenuerunt Romani, ut posteritati innotescerent ejusdem et nomina et subjectio. Cursorio hucusque oculo, qualis sub Romanorum imperio erat, Britanniam lustravimus; restat ut parili compendio Caledoniorum terras lustremus.

#### *De Caledonia.*

51. Licet tota ultra isthmum prædictum Britannia non improprie dici posset Caledonia, ipsi tamen Caledonii ultra Vararem sedem habuere, unde ducta linea terminum Romani in Britanniam imperii accurate satis ostendit. Citerior vero insulæ pars alio atque alio tempore ab illis possessa fuit, reliqua, ut supra meminimus, a Britonibus barbaris occupata. Hucusque et proficiscentibus lumen aliquod foenerant antiqua historiarum monumenta; trajicientes autem Varar flumen, extincto lumine, in obscuro quasi versamur; et quamvis non nobis ignotum sit, extructas ibi pro limitibus imperii Romani fuisse aras, Ulyssemque, tempestate fluctibusque jactatum, hic vota persolvisse, siquidem condensæ arboribus sylvæ, cum perpetuis montium saxetis, ab ulteriori nos scrutatione prohibent. Relationem sequentem a mercatoribus Britonibus fugitivis acceptam posterisque relictam, ut sufficientem æstimemus, necesse est. 52. Ad occidentem igitur Vararis habitabant Caledonii, proprie sic

dicti, quorum regionis partem tegebat immensa illa Caledonia sylva. 53. Littus incolebant minores quidam populi, ex quorum numero, ultra Vararem et erectas supradictas aras, ad Loxam fluvium habitabant Cantæ, in quorum finibus promontorium Penoxullum. 54. Huic ordine proximus est fluvius Abona ejusdemque accolæ Logi. Hinc illa fluvius, et ad illum siti Carnabii Britonum extremi, qui ab Ostorio proprætore subjugati, jugum Romanum indigne ferentes, adscitis in societatem Cantiiis, ut referunt traditiones, trajectoque mari ibi sedem eligunt. In varia hic promontoria sese extendit Britannia, quorum primum antiquis dictum Vinvedrum, tum Verubrium, aut extremitas Caledoniæ. 55. Post illos Catini; deinde, interiores Logisque proximi, Mertæ siti sunt. In his oris promontorium Orcadum positum, cui adjacebant Orcades insulæ. Ulterius manabat Nabæus fluvius, qui terminus erat Carnabiciæ jurisdictionis. 56. Ad inferiorem hujus regionis partem habitabant Carnonacæ, in quorum finibus promontorium Ebudum, ad cujus extrema eximium oceanus sinum efformat, qui olim Volsas appellatus. Ad inferiorem istius sinus ripam tendebant Cerones, et infra Ityn Creones ad Longum usque procurrit. Inde oceanum inter et sinum Lelanum dictum ab incolis Epidiis promontorium. 57. Profectus jam ultra flumen Vararis, idem illud remetiri non possum, quin in transgressu admirer Romanos, alias satis expertos judicio atque experientia, hic quasi destitutos tam perabsurda opinione laborasse, ut istam Britannicæ partem, quæ jam armis ipsorum intacta quiescebat, reliquam jam subactam atque possessam, longe majori et longitudine et latitudine metirentur, (quam tamen eos fovisse opinionem satis superque constat). Qui enim ea, qua par est, mente insignem Romanorum ambitionem atque insatiabilem regnandi cupidinem consideraverit, et quo hostem vix ira ipsorum et notitia, nedum timore dignum excluderent, stupenda ista, quæ totum orbem in admirationem sui facile trahunt, opera



erexisse, in hoc ut in cæteris quam plurimis magnam summi Numinis merito providentiam veneremur, cui ut omnia subjecta sunt regna, ita et sempiterna ab incolis gloria debetur et erit. Amen !

## CAPUT VII.

Lustratis ita pro instituti ratione cursim terris Britannicis, necessarium videtur, antequam ad Insularum descriptionem aggrediar, dubio a non nemine moto occurrere; ubinam, inquit ille, earum quas tu nobis commemoras urbium nominumque vestigia? Habentur nulla! Licet vicissim quærere, ubinam hodie sint Assyrii, Parthi, Sarmatæ, Celtiberi? At qui has celeberrimas gentes exstitisse neget, impudentem satis spero futurum neminem. Nonne inveniuntur hodiernum regiones urbesque permultæ eisdem, quæ ante duo vel plura annorum millia habuerunt, quæ compellantur, nominibus? Judæa, Italia, Gallia, Britannia, non hodie minus quam priscis illis temporibus nota? Londinum hodieque lingua vernacula, sono non adeo discrepante, *London* appellatur. Incuria majorum et in colligendis ac conservandis illis, quæ huc facere et tunc temporis non difficulter haberi poterant, monumentis negligentia si attendatur, non adeo quidem graviter illa videtur increpanda, vel ut hujus defectus unica et primaria causa censenda, vix enim præter illos, qui ordini sacrorum se dederant, operam libris scribendis commodabant. Hi vero a sacro alienum censuerunt munere profanis istiusmodi, ut vocabant, negotiis operam suam impendere. Crediderim potius nos sine periculo scire, et sine piaculo ad posteros transmittere posse, illa quæ de prisco regnorum statu sedula veterum monumentorum perlustratio et accuratius scrutinium poterit investigare. Ad aliud vero sentiendum me fere compulisset bonus ille Antistes, ita me compellare visus; Tunc solus ignoras quam breve, nobis in hoc

orbe, temporis spatium sit exigendum, omnesque nostros etiam laboriosissimos conatus ab inutilium servorum nomine nos non posse reddere immunes? omniaque nostra studia proximi usum pro scopo debent habere? Hæc! cui unquam sunt usui? Bullatis istiusmodi nugis mundum deludi! His merito reponimus: An ergo prohibita nobis simul omnis honesta delectatio? Nonne eximia divinæ providentiæ documenta produnt istiusmodi narrationes? Indene patet, quomodo evangelia de morte et merito Christi concio universum collustraverit et vicerit orbem gentilibus antea superstitionibus obnoxium? Obvertenti porro, non incongrue forte Chronologiæ istiusmodi res in compendio tractari, denuo repono: Nec ergo nimium quidquam est novisse, majores nostros non, ut nonnulli fabulantur, Autochthones fuisse, e terra prosilientes. Deum potius naturæ librum aperuisse, ut in illo constaret magni opificis omnipotentia, qualis in Mosis voluminibus eadem descripta proponitur. Denique forte respondent, operibus, auctori apud cæteros nomen laudemque parituris, exploratorium ignem esse subeundum, hæc inquam dicenti, et in his subsistendi gratus profiteor tantum his verbis efficaciam fuisse, ut etiam suborta mihi nonnunquam fuerit cœpti hujus laboris poenitentia. Ex altera proinde hujus opusculi parte præter Chronologicam rerum commemorationem amplius quidquam expectare nolit Benevolus Lector, quem adeo benevolentiam tutelæque Divinæ, paria ab ipso mihi promittens, devotus commendo, sperans, ut me simul cœlesti Patri, qui misericors et condonationis plenus, commendet.

Ex fragmentis quibusdam a duce quodam Romano consignatis et posteritati relictis, sequens collectum est Itinerarium, ex Ptolemæo et aliunde nonnullis, ordinem quoque, sed quod spero in melius mutatum, hinc inde deprehendes.

FUERUNT olim apud Britones XCII. urbes, earum



vero celebriores et præ reliquis conspicuæ XXXIII.; municipia scilicet II., Verolanium et Eboracum. VIII. coloniæ, sc. Londinium *Augusta*, Camalodunum *Geminæ Martiæ*, Rhutupis, . . . . Thermæ *Aquæ Solis*, Isca *Secunda*, Deva *Getica*, Glevum *Claudia*, Lindum, . . . . . Camboricum . . . . . Et civitates Latio jure donatæ X., sc. Durnomagus, Catarracton, Cambodunum, Coccium, Lugubalia, Ptoroton, Victoria, Theodosia, Corinum, Sorbiodunum. Deinde XII. stipendiariæ minorisque momenti, scilicet Venta Silurum, Venta Belgarum, Venta Icenorum, Segontium, Muridunum, Ragæ, Cantiopolis, Durinum, Isca, Bremenium, Vindonum, et Durobrovæ. At præter allatas modo urbes, plures in Britanniis non habuisse Romanos ne quis temere credat; celebriores enim tantum commemoravi; quis enim dubitet, illos, ut orbis terrarum dominatores, pro lubitu elegisse sibi vindicasse, quæ suis usibus commoda intelligebant loca? plerumque alias in castris, quæ considerant ipsi, degebant.

### *Diaphragmata.*

ITER I. Rhutupis prima in Britannia insula civitas versus Galliam apud Cantios sita a Gessoriago Bonnoniæ portu, unde commodissimus in supradictam insulam transitus obtingit, CCCCL. stadia, vel ut alii volunt XLVI. mille passuum remota: ab eadem civitate ducta est via Guethelinga dicta, usque in Segontium per m. p. CCCXXIII. plus minus sic:—Cantiopoli, quæ et Duroverno, m. p. X. Durosevo XII. Duroprovis XXV. deinde m. p. XXVII. transis Thamesin intrasque provinciam Flaviam et civitatem Londinium (*Augustam*), Sulo Mago m. p. VIII. Verolamio municipio XII. unde fuit Amphibalus et Albanus Martyres. Foro Dianæ XII. Magio Vinio XII. Lactorodo XII. Isanta Varia XII. Tripontio XII. Benonis VIII. Hic biseclatur via, alterutrumque ejus brachium Lindum usque,

alterum versus Viriconium protenditur, sic :—Manduesuedo m. p. XII. Etoceto XIII. Pennocrucio XII. Uxaconia XII. Virioconio XI. Banchorio XXVI. Deva Colonia X. Fines Flaviæ et Secundæ, Varis m. p. XXX. Conovio XX. Seguntio XXIII.

ITER II. A Seguntio Virioconium usque, m. p. LXXIII. sic :—Heriri monte m. p. XXV. Mediolano XXV. Rutunio XII. Virioconio XI.

ITER III. A Londinio Lindum coloniam usque, sic :—Durosito m. p. XII. Cæsaro Mago XVI. Canonio XV. Camaloduno colonia VIII. ibi erat templum Claudii, arx triumphalis, et imago Victoriæ deæ. Ad Sturium amnem m. p. VI. et finibus Trinobantum Cenimannos advenis, Cambretonio m. p. XV. Sito Mago XXII. Venta Cenom. XXIII. . . . . Camborico colonia XX. Durali ponte XX. Durno Mago XX. Isinnis XX. Lindo XX.

ITER IV. A Lindo ad Vallum usque, sic :—Argolico m. p. XIII. Dano XX. Ibi intras Maximam Cæsariensem, Legotio m. p. XVI. Eboraco municip. olim colonia sexta m. p. XXI. Isurio XVI. Cattaractoni XXIII. ad Tisam X. Vinovio XII. Epiaco XVIII. ad Murum VIII. trans Murum intras Valentiam. Alauna amne m. p. XXV. Tueda flumine XXX. ad Vallum. . . . .

ITER V. A limite Præturiam usque, sic :—Curia m. p. . . . ad Fines m. p. . . . Bremenio m. p. . . . Corstoplio XX. Vindomora VIII. Vindovio XVIII. Cattaractoni XXII. Eboraco XL. Derventione VII. Delgovicia XIII. Prætorio XXV.

ITER VI. Ab Eboraco Devam usque, sic :—Calcaria m. p. VIII. Camboduno XXII. Mancunio XVIII. Finibus Maximæ et Flaviæ m. p. XVIII. Condate XVIII. Deva XVIII.

ITER VII. A Portu Sistuntiorum Eboracum usque, sic :—Rerigonio m. p. XXIII. ad Alpes Peninos VIII. Alicana X. Isurio XVIII. Eboraco XVI.



ITER VIII. Ab Eboraco Luguvalium usque, sic:—Cattaractoni m. p. XL. Lataris XVI. Vataris XVI. Brocavonacis XVIII. Vorreda XVIII. Lugubalia XVIII.

ITER VIIII. A Luguballio Ptorotonim usque, sic:—Trimontio m. p. . . . . Gadanica m. p. . . . . Corio m. p. . . . . ad Vallum m. p. . . . . Incipit Vespasiana. Alauna m. p. XII. Lindo VIIII. Victoria VIIII. ad Hiernam VIIII. Orrea XIIII. ad Tavum XVIIII. ad Æsicam XXIII. ad Tinam VIII. Devana XXIII. ad Itunam XXIIII. ad Montem Grampium m. p. . . . . ad Selinam m. p. . . . . Tuessis XVIIII. Ptorotone m. p. . . . .

ITER X. Ab ultima Ptorotone per mediam insulæ Isca Damnonorum usque, sic:—Varis m. p. VIII. ad Tuessim XVIII. Tamea XXVIIII. . . . . m. p. XXI. in Medio VIIII. Orrea VIIII. Victoria XVIII. ad Vallum XXXII. Luguballia LXXX. Brocavonacis XXII. ad Alaunam m. p. . . . . Coccio m. p. . . . . Mancunio XVIII. Condate XXIII. Mediolano XVIII. Etoceto m. p. . . . . Salinis m. p. . . . . Glebon colonia m. p. . . . . Corino XIIII. Aquas Solis m. p. . . . . ad Aquas XVIII. ad Uxellam amnem m. p. . . . . Isca m. p. . . . .

ITER XI. Ab Aquis per Viam Juliam Menapiam usque, sic:—ad Abonam m. p. VI. ad Sabrinam VI. unde trajectu intras in Britanniam Secundam et stationem Trajectum m. p. III. Venta Silurum VIII. Isca colonia VIIII. unde fuit Aaron Martyr. Tibia amne m. p. VIII. Bovio XX. Nido XV. Leucaro XV. ad Vigesium XX. ad Menapiam XVIIII. Ab hac urbe per XXX. m. p. navigas in Hyberniam.

ITER XII. Ab Aquis Londinium usque, sic:—Verlucione m. p. XV. Cunetione XX. Spinis XV. Calleba Attrebatum XV. Bibracte XX. Londinio XX.

ITER XIII. Ab Isca Uriconium usque, sic :—Bultro m. p. VIII. Gobannio XII. Magna XXIII. Brangenio XXIII. Urioconio XXVII.

ITER XIII. Ab Isca per Glebon Lindum usque, sic :—Ballio m. p. VIII. Blestio XII. Sariconio XI. Glebon colonia XV. ad Antonam XV. Alauna XV. . . . . Vennonis XII. Raticorion XII. Venromento XII. Margiduno XII. ad Pontem XII. Croco colana Lindum XII.

ITER XV. A Londinio per Clausentum in Londinium, sic :—Caleba m. p. XLIII. Vindomi XV. Venta Belgarum XXI. ad Lapidem VI. Clausento III. Portu Magno X. Regno X. ad Decimum X. Anderida portu m. p. . . . . ad Lemanum m. p. XXV. Lemaniano portu X. Dubris X. Rhutupis colonia X. Regulbio X. Contiopoli X. Durelevo XVIII. Mado XII. Vagnaca XVIII. Novio Mago XVIII. Londinio XV.

ITER XVI. A Londinio Ceniam usque, sic :—Venta Belgarum m. p. XC. Brige XI. Sorbioduno VIII. Ventageladia XII. Durnovaria VIII. Moriduno XXXIII. Isca Damnon. XV. . . . . Durio amne m. p. . . . . Tamara m. p. . . . . Voluba m. p. . . . . Ceniam m. p. . . . .

ITER XVII. Ab Anderida [Eboracum] usque, sic :—Sylva Anderida m. p. . . . . Noviomago m. p. . . . . Londinio m. p. XV. ad Fines m. p. . . . . Durolisponde m. p. . . . . Durnomago m. p. XXX. Corisennia XXX. Lindo XXX. in Medio XV. ad Abum XV. unde transis in Maximam, ad Petuariam m. p. VI. deinde Eboraco, ut supra, m. p. XLVI.

ITER XVIII. Ab Eboraco per medium insulæ Clausentum usque, sic :—Legiolio m. p. XXI. ad Fines XVIII. . . . m. p. XVI. . . . m. p. XVI. . . .



. . . . . Derventione m. p. XVI. ad Trivonam XII. Etoceto XII. Manduessuedo XVI. Benonnis XII. Tripontio XI. Isannavaria XII. Brinavis XII. Ælia castra XVI. Dorocina XV. Tamesi VI. Vindomi XV. Clausento XLVI.

Plurima insuper habebant Romani in Britanniiis castella, suis quæque muris, turribus, portis, et repagulis munita.

*Finis Itinerariorum.*

Quod hactenus auribus, in hoc capite percipitur pene oculis intuentibus: nam huic adjuncta est mappa Britanniae artificialiter depicta, quæ omnia loca cet. evidenter exprimit, ut ex ea cunctarum regionum incolas dignoscere detur.

CAPUT VIII.

1. LUSTRAVIMUS jam Albionem, dissitæ non procul inde Hyberniae, eadem, qua hactenus usi fuimus brevitate, descriptionem daturi. 2. Hybernia omnium, post Albionem dictam nuper, maxime est ad occidentem quidem sita, sed, sicut contra septentriones ea brevior, ita in meridiem sese trans illius fines plurimum protendens, usque contra Hispaniae Tarraconensis septentrionalia, quamvis magno æquore interjacente, pervenit. 3. Mare, quod Britanniam et Hyberniam interfluit, undosum et inquietum est, toto, ut author est Solinus, anno, non nisi æstivis pauculis diebus, navigabile. In medio inter ambas insula est, quæ olim appellabatur Monæda, nunc autem Manavia. 4. Hybernia autem, et sui status conditione, et salubritate ac serenitate aëris, multum Britanniae præstat, ut opinatur Beda, ita, ut raro ibi nix plus quam triduarum remaneat, nemo propter hiemem aut fœna secet, aut stabula fabricet jumentis. 5. Nullum ibi reptile videri solet, nullæ viperæ aut serpentes valent; nam sæpe illo de Britannia allati serpentes mox, ut

proximante terris navigio odore aëris illius adtacti fuerint, intereunt. Quin potius omnia pene, quæ de eadem insula sunt, contra venenum valent. Denique vidimus, quibusdam a serpente percussis, rasa folia codicum, qui de Hybernia fuerunt, et ipsam rasuram aquæ immissam ac potui datam talibus protinus totam vim veneni grassantis totum inflati corporis absumsisse, ac sedasse tumorem. 6. Dives lactis et mellis insula, nec vinearum expers, piscium volucrumque, sed et cervorum caprearumque venatu insignis, ut author est venerabilis Beda. 7. Cultores ejus, inquit Mela, inconditi sunt et omnium virtutum ignari, magis quam aliæ gentes, aliquatenus tamen gnari pietatis ad modum expertes. Gens inhospita et bellicosa a Solino Polyhistore dicti sunt. Sanguine interemptorum hausto prius victores vultus suos oblinunt. Fas ac nefas eodem animo ducunt. Puerpera, si quando marem edidit, primos cibos gladio imponit mariti, inque os parvuli summo muerone, auspicium alimentorum leviter infert, et gentilibus votis optat, non aliter quam in bello et inter arma mortem oppetat. Qui student cultui, dentibus mari nantium belluarum insigniunt ensium capulos, candicant enim ob eburneam claritatem. Nam præcipua viris gloria est in armorum splendore. 8. Agrippa, geographus Romanus, longitudinem Hyberniæ DC. millia passuum esse, latitudinem vero CCC. statuit. XX. olim gentibus habitata, quarum XIX. littus tenebant. 9. Hæc autem propria Scottorum patria erat; ab hac egressi, tertiam in Albione Britonibus et Pictis gentem addiderunt. Sed non idem cum magno authore Beda sentio, qui Scottos peregrinos esse affirmat: nam, ut existimo, suam ex Britannia non procul sita originem duxerunt, inde trajecisse, atque in hac insula sedes occupasse, fidem faciunt authores. Certissimum vero est Dámnios, Voluntios, Brigantes, Cangos, aliasque nationes origine fuisse Britannica, quæ eo postea trajecerunt, postquam, vel Divitiacus, vel Claudius, vel Ostorius, vel duces alii victores,



illis domi tumultum fecerant. Pro ulteriori argumento inservit lingua antiqua, quæ cum antiqua illa Britannica et Gallica non parum consonat, id quod omnibus utriusque linguæ gnaris satis planum videtur. 10. Septentrionali Hyberniam lateri obtenditur oceanus Deuceledonicus; orientale tegunt Vergivus et Internus, Cantabricus vero australe, uti occidentale magnus ille Britannicus, qui et Atlanticus oceanus; quem nos quoque ordinem secuti dabimus insulæ et præcipuorum in illa locorum descriptionem. 11. Illud, quod ab oceano Deuceledonico alluitur, hujus insulæ latus habitabant Rhobogdii, cujus metropolis Rhobogdium erat; in quorum orientali regione situm erat ejusdem nominis promontorium, in occidentali, Boreum promontorium. Fluvii vero Banna, Darabouna, Argitta, et Vidua, austrum versus a Scottis ipsos separabant montes. 12. Infra promontorium Boreum littus Britannici maris ad Venicinium usque caput incolebant gentes Venicniæ, quibus nomen debent ab illis dictæ vicinæ insulæ Venicniæ, inferius ad ostium usque Rhebii fluminis, quarum metropolis Rheba. Infra Rhebeum Nagnatæ habitabant ad Libnium usque, quorum celebris erat ejusdem nominis metropolis. Austrum versus, in recessu sinus Ausobæ siti erant Auterii, quibus urbium caput erat ejusdem nominis. Inferiorem ejusdem regionis partem occupabant Concangii, ad quorum fines austrum versus manabat Senus, amplus omnino fluvius, cui adjacebat urbium primaria Macobicum. In angustum hic apicem coarctata desinit Hybernia. Prope Austrinum promontorium, ad flumen Senum, sedes habebant Velatorii, quorum metropolis Regia, fluviusque Durius. Lucani vero habitabant, ubi oceano miscetur fluvius Ibernus. 13. Ultra Austrinum meridionale insulæ latus ab eodem promontorio ad Sacrum usque extremum tendebat. Ibernii ad illud habitabant, quibus metropolis Rhufina. Hinc fluvius Dobona, ac deinde Vodiæ, cum promontorio ejusdem nominis, quod promontorio Albionis Anti-

vestæo obvertitur, distans inde milliaribus CXXXXV. Non procul inde Dabrona fluvius Brigantum regionis terminus, qui fines regionis fluvium Brigas et urbem habebant Brigantiam. 14. Pars hujus insulæ, a Sacro promontorio ad Rhobogdium usque extensa, Orientalis censetur. Habitantes supra promontorium Sacrum Menapii, primariam habebant ejusdem nominis urbem ad fluvium Modonam. Hinc ad Menapiam, in Dimetia sitam, XXX. milliaria numerantur, ut Plinius refert. Harum unam, quamnam vero incertum, patriam habebat Carausius. Ultra horum terminos metropolin Dunum habebant Cauci, quorum fines alluebat fluvius Oboca. Teutonicæ binas has nationes originis esse extra dubium est: incertum vero quo tempore primum in has terras eorum majores trajecerint. Brevi ante Cæsaris in Britanniam transitum id contigisse maxime videtur probabile. 15. Eblanæ ulterius habitabant, primariam vero ad Lœbium flumen habentes Mediolanum. Septentrionali viciniore Voluntii civitatem habebant Lebarum, fluvios autem Vinderum et Buvindam. Superiorem his insulæ partem, Rhobogdiis affinem, tenebant Damnii, his urbium caput Dunum, ubi sepulti creduntur D. Patricius, D. Columba, et D. Brigitta, eodem tumulo reconditi. 16. Restat jam, ut eorum qui interiorem hujus insulæ partem habitabant populorum mentio injiciatur. Contermini Caucis et Menapiis, supra Brigantes autem, incolebant Coriondii, reliquam insulæ partem Scotti habebant, quibus Scotiæ nomen tota exinde debet. Plures inter, quas illi habebant, civitates præ cæteris innotuerunt tantum duæ, quarum ad nos pervenit memoria. Altera Rheba ad flumen et lacum Rhebium, Ibernica altera, sita ad orientale Seni fluminis latus. 17. Non possum non hoc loco monere Damnios, Voluntios, Brigantes, et Canganos omnes fuisse Britannicæ originis nationes, quæ, cum vel ab hoste finitimo non daretur quies, vel tot tantaque exigenter tributa, quibus solvendis se impares intelligerent, sensim, novas quæsituræ sedes, in



hanc terram trajecerant. Dictum jam antea de Menapiis, Chaucis, nec de iis, quæ offeruntur ulterius, plura occurrunt, quibus tuto fides potest haberi. Refert quidem, Augustæ Historiæ scriptor, Tacitus, quod pluribus quam Albion peregrinis Hybernia fuerit frequentata. At, si res ita revera se habuisset, vix dubitandum videtur, plura nobis de statu Hyberniæ, et fide digniora veteres fuisse relicturos. Relicturoque jam mihi descriptionem Hyberniæ non abs re fore videtur docere, hanc, non armis, sed metu tantum sub Romanorum redactam fuisse imperium. Quin potius regem Ptolemæum in secunda Europæ tabula, aliosque veterum inclutissimorum geographorum, in situ illius delineando errasse, utpote qui hanc non solum justo longius a Britannia, sed etiam prorsus a parte boreali provinciæ Secundæ, statuerunt; id quod ex ipsorum libris et tabulis huc spectantibus patet abunde. 18. Super Hyberniam sitæ erant Hebudes, V. numero, quarum incolæ nesciunt fruges, piscibus tantum et lacte viventes. Rex unus est, ut scribit Solinus, universis, nam quotquot sunt, omnes angusto interludio dividuntur. Ille rex nihil suum habebat, omnia universorum. Ad æquitatem certis legibus adstringitur, ac, ne avaritia a vero rectoque eum seduceret, discebat ex paupertate justitiam, utpote cui nihil esset rei familiaris, verum alitur e publico. Nulla illi dabatur fœmina propria, sed per vicissitudines, in quacunque commotus fuisset, sibi vendicat usurariam, unde ei nec votum nec spes conceditur liberorum. De Hebudibus hisce nonnulli scripserunt dies continuos XXX. sub bruma esse noctem, sed dictator Cæsar nihil de eo, studiose licet inquirens, reperiēbat, nisi, quod certis ex aqua mensuris breviores fuisse noctes quam in Gallia intellexerit. 19. Secundam a continenti stationem Orcades præbent, quæ ab Hebudibus porro, sed erroneè, sunt VII. dierum totidemque noctium cursu, ut scripserunt nonnulli; numero XXX., angustis inter sese deductæ spatiis, vacabant homine, non habebant sylvas,



tantum juncis herbis horrescentes. Cætera earum nil nisi arenæ et rupes tenent, ut ego, ex Solino cum aliis colligi posse, habeo persuasum. 20. Thule ultima omnium, quæ Britannicæ vocantur, Belgarum littori appositâ statuitur a Mela. Græcis Romanisque celebrata carminibus, de quo Homerus Mantuanus :

“ ——— Et tibi serviat ultima Thule.”

In ea solstitio nullas esse noctes indicavimus, cancri signum sole transeunte, ut author est Plinius, nullosque contra per brumam dies ; hæc quidem senis mensibus continuis fieri arbitrantur. Qui hic habitant, ut refert Solinus, principio veris inter pecudes pabulis vivunt, deinde lacte, in hyemem conferunt arborum fructus. Utuntur fœminis vulgo, certum matrimonium nullis. Thule autem largâ et diutina pomona copiosa est, ut tradit idem author. Ultra Thulen unius diei navigatione accepimus pigrum esse et concretum mare, a nonnullis Cronium appellatur. A Thule in Caledoniam bidui navigatio est. 21. Thanatos insula alluitur freto oceani, a Britannicæ continente æstuario tenui, Wantsuam dicto, separata ; frumentariis campis felix, et gleba uberi ; nec tantum sibi soli, verum et aliis salubribus locis, ut author est Isidorus, cum ipsa nullo serpatur angue, asportata inde terra, quoquo gentium invecta sit, angues necat. Hæc non longe abest a Rhutupi sita. 22. Vecta, a Vespasiano devicta olim, insula est, proximum Belgis habet ab oriente in occasum XXX. circiter millia passuum, ab austro in boream XII. in orientalibus suis partibus mari VI. millium, in occidentalibus III., a meridionali supra scripto littore distans. 23. Præter supradictas insulas fuerunt etiam VII. Acomodæ, Ricnea, Silimnus, Andros, Sigdiles XL., Vindilios, Sarna, Cæsarea, et Cassiterides. 24. Sena, Ossismicis adversa littoribus, Gallici Numinis oraculo insignis est, ut author est Mela ; cujus antistites, perpetua virginitate sanctæ, numero IX. esse traduntur ; Senas Galli vocant, putantque ingeniis singularibus præ-



ditas, maria ac ventos concitare carminibus, seque in quæ velint animalia vertere, sanare quæ apud alios insanabilia sunt. Scire ventura et prædicere, sed non nisi deditæ navigantibus, et ob id tantum ut se consulerent eo profectis. 25. Reliquæ Albioni circumfusæ minoris peripheriæ et momenti insulæ, ex depictæ adjectæque mappæ inspectione melius, quam ex nudo quodam recensu, censi ac dignosci possunt. Hic itaque subsisto meumque his rebus locatum studium Benevolo Lectori, ejusque favori et judicio studiose commendo.

Explicit feliciter, Deo juvante, Liber primus Commentarioli Geographici de situ Brittaniæ, et stationum quas Romani ipsi in ea Insula ædificaverunt, per manum meam Ricardi, famuli Christi et monachi Westmonasteriensis. Deo gratias.

---

## LIBER SECUNDUS.

### PRÆFATIO.

IN supplementum datæ hucusque Britanniae antiquæ descriptionis deductum parili compendio subjungere consultum duxi:—

I. Chronologiæ, a prima inde orbis origine ad vastatam a Gothis Romam deductæ, epitomen, et

II. Imperatorum Legatorumque Romanorum qui huic regioni cum imperio præfuerant brevem recensum.

Dicant forte nonnulli potuisse istiusmodi operam, utpote non absolute necessariam, vel cultui divino, vel majoris momenti rebus impendi. At sciant illi et subsequas horas antiquitatibus patriis pristinique terrarum status investigationi posse vindicari, ut tamen nihil propterea sacro cultui decedat. Sin vero Momus istius-

modi captatam ex otio licito voluptatem nobis invideat, ad finem properans metæque jam adstitutus, hic pedem figo.

## CAPUT I.

IN principio mundum, nobis hodiernum reliquisque creaturis habitatum, VI. dierum spatio ex nihilo condidit omnipotens Creator.

ANNO MUNDI MDCLVI. Crescentem continuo usu humani generis malitiam vindicaturus, Creator diluvium orbi immisit, quod totum obruens mundum, omnem delevit viventium ordinem, solis, quæ arcam intraverant, exceptis et servatis, quorum deinceps propago novis animalium colonis novum orbem replevit.

A. M. MMM. Circa hæc tempora cultam et habitatam primum Britanniam arbitrantur nonnulli, cum illam salutarent Græci Phœnicesque mercatores. Nec desunt, qui a rege quodam Brytone non diu postea conditum credunt Londinium.

A. M. MMMCCXXVIII. Prima urbis Romæ, quæ gentium exinde communis terror, fundamenta posuerunt fratres Romulus et Remus.

A. M. MMMD. Egressi e Britannia per Galliam Senones Italiam invasere, Romam oppugnaturi.

A. M. MMMDCL. Has terras intrarunt Belgæ, Celtaeque desertam a Senonibus regionem occuparunt. Non diu postea cum exercitu in hoc regnum transiit rex Æduorum Divitiacus, magnamque ejus partem subegit. Circa hæc tempora in Hyberniam commigrarunt, ejecti a Belgis Britones, ibique sedes posuerunt, ex illo tempore Scotti appellati.

A. M. MMMDCCCXLIII. Gestum est Cassibelini cum civitatibus maritimis bellum.

A. M. MMMDCCCXLVI. Cæsar Germanos et Gallos capit, et Britones quoque, quibus ante eum ne



nomen quidem Romanorum cognitum fuerat, victor, obsidibus acceptis, stipendarios facit.

A. M. MMMDCCCXLVII. Denuo in has terras profectus, bellum gessit cum rege Cassiorum Cassibelino, invitatus, ut ipse quidem prætendit, a Trinobantibus. Sed, quod majore veri specie tradit Suetonius, potius avaritiem ipsius sollicitantibus prætiosis Britanniae margaritis.

A. M. MMMMXLIV. Ipse in Britanniam profectus imperator Claudius, semestri spatio, absque ulla vi aut sanguinis effusione, magnam insulae partem in suam redegit potestatem, quam exinde Cæsariensem jussit vocari.

A. M. MMMMXLV. Missus ab imperatore Claudio cum II. legione in has terras Vespasianus, adhuc in privata vita, Belgas Damnoniosque oppugnavit, tandemque, commissis præliis XXXII. urbibus XX. expugnatis, sub obsequium Romani imperii redegit, una cum insula Vecta.

A. M. MMMMXLVII. Thermas et Glebon occupaverunt Romani.

A. M. MMMML. Post novennale bellum regem Silurum Charaticum vicit dux Romanorum Ostorius, magna Britanniae pars in formam provinciae redacta, et Camalodunensis coloniae posita fundamenta.

A. M. MMMMLII. Cogibundo urbes quaedam apud Belgas a Romanis concessae, ut inde sibi conderet Regnum. Circa hæc tempora, relicta Britannia, Cangi et Brigantes in Hyberniam commigrarunt sedesque ibi posuerunt.

A. M. MMMMLXI. Nero imperator, in re militari nihil omnino ausus, Britanniam pene amisit. Nam duo sub illo nobilissima oppida illic capta atque eversa sunt. Nam insurrexit contra Romanos Bondvica, illatam sibi a Romanis injuriam vindicatura, colonias illas Romanorum, Londinium, Camalodunum, et municipium Verulamium igne delevit, occisis ultra octoginta millibus civium Ro-

manorum. Superata illa tandem a Suetonio, qui acerrime illatum Romanis damnum vindicavit, occiso subditorum ejus æquali numero.

A. M. MMMMLXXIII. Brigantes vicit Cerealis.

A. M. MMMMLXXVI. Ordovices plectit Frontinus.

A. M. MMMMLXXX. Magnum cum rege Caledoniorum Galgaco prælium committit Agricola, eoque devicto, totam insulam cum classe lustrari jubet, maritimamque ipsius oram totus obiens, Orcades submittit imperio Romano.

A. M. MMMMCXX. Ipse in Britanniam transit Hadrianus imperator, immensoque muro unam insulæ partem ab altera sejungit.

A. M. MMMMCXL. Missus ab Antonino Pio Urbicus victoriis inclarescit.

A. M. MMMMCL. Nonnullas quoque a Britannis victorias reportat Aurelius Antoninus.

A. M. MMMMCLX. Luce Christianismi, regnante Lucio rege, collustratur Britannia; rege Cruci Christi se primum submitte.

A. M. MMMMCLXX. Provincia Vespasiana ejiciuntur Romani. Hoc circiter tempore, ex insulis in Britanniam cum Pictis suis advenisse creditur Reuda rex.

A. M. MMMMCCVII. Destructum, a Romanis conditum, murum restituit transiens in Britanniam Severus imperator, et non diu post Eboraci, manu Dei, moritur.

A. M. MMMMCCXI. Venalem a Mæatis pacem obtinuit Bassianus.

A. M. MMMMCCXX. Per hæc tempora intra moenia se continent Romani milites, altaque pace tota perfruitur insula.

A. M. MMMMCCXC. Carausius, sumpta purpura, Britannias occupavit; post X. annos per Asclepiodorum Britannia recepta.

A. M. MMMMCCCI. Persecutio crudelis et crebra flagrabat, ut intra unum mensem XVII. millia marty-



rum pro Christo passa inveniantur; quæ et oceani limbum transgressa Albanum, Aaron, et Julium Britones, cum aliis pluribus viris et fœminis, felici cruore damnavit.

A. M. MMMMCCCVI. Constantius, XVI. imperii anno, summæ mansuetudinis et civilitatis vir, victo Alecto, in Britannia diem obiit Eboraci.

A. M. MMMMCCCVII. Constantinus, qui Magnus postea dicitur, Constantii ex Britannica Helena filius, in Britanniiis creatus imperator, cui se sponte tributariam offert Hybernia.

A. M. MMMMCCCXX. Ductu regis Fergusii in Britanniam transeunt Scotti, ibique sedem figunt.

A. M. MMMMCCCLXXXV. Theodosius Maximum tyrannum III. ab Aquileia lapide interfecit. Qui, quoniam Britanniam omni pene armata juventute copiisque spoliaverat militaribus, quæ, tyrannidis ejus vestigia secutæ in Gallias, nunquam ultra domum rediere, videntes, transmarinæ gentes sævissimæ, Scottorum a circio, Pictorum ab aquilone, destitutam milite ac defensore insulam, adveniunt, et vastatam direptamque eam multos per annos opprimunt.

A. M. MMMMCCCXCVI. Britones Scottorum Pictorumque infestationem non ferentes, Romam mittunt, et, sui subjectione promissa, contra hostem auxilia flagitant, quibus statim missa legio magnam barbarorum multitudinem sternit, cæteros Britanniae finibus pellit, ac, domum reversura, præcepit sociis, ad arcendos hostes, murum trans insulam inter duo æstuaria statuere. Qui, absque artifice magistro magis cespite quam lapide factus, nil operantibus profuit: nam mox, ut discessere Romani, advectus navibus prior hostis, quasi maturam segetem, obvia quæque sibi cædit, calcatur, devorat.

A. M. MMMMCCCC. Iterum petiti auxilia Romani advolant, et cæsum hostem trans maria fugant conjunctis sibi Britonibus, murum non terra, ut ante pulvereum, sed saxo solidum, inter civitates, quæ ibidem ob metum hostium fuerunt factæ, a mari usque ad mare collocant.

Sed et in littore meridiano maris, quia et inde hostis Saxonicus timebatur, turres per intervalla ad prospectum maris statuunt. Id Stilichontis erat opus, ut ex his Claudiani versibus constat :

“ ————— Caledonio velata Britannia monstro,  
Ferro Picta genas, cujus vestigia verrit  
Cærus, oceanique æstum mentitur, amictus :  
Me quoque vicinis pereuntem gentibus, inquit,  
Munivit Stilicho, totam cum Scottus Hybernâ  
Movit, et infesto spumavit remige Thetys.  
Illius effectum curis, ne bella timerem  
Scotica, ne Pictum tremere, ne littore toto  
Prospicerem dubiis venturum Saxona ventis.”

A. M. MMMMCCCCXI. Occupata a Gothis est Roma, sedes quartæ et maxumæ monarchiarum, de quibus Daniel fuerat vaticinatus, anno millesimo centesimo sexagesimo quarto suæ conditionis. Ex quo autem tempore Romani in Britannia regnare cessarunt, post annos ferme CCCCLXV. ex quo C. Julius Cæsar eandem insulam adiit.

A. M. MMMMCCCCXLVI. Recedente a Britanniis legione Romana, cognita Scotti et Picti reditus denegatione, redeunt ipsi, et totam ab aquilone insulam pro indigenis muro tenus capescunt, nec mora, cæsis, captis, fugatisque custodibus muri et ipso interrupto, etiam intra illum crudelis prædo grassatur. Mittitur epistola lachrymis ærumnisque referta ad Romanæ potestatis virum Fl. Ætium, ter consulem, vicesimo tertio Theodosii principis anno petens auxilium, nec impetrat.

## CAPUT II.

VERITATEM, quoad fieri licuit, sectatus fui, si quid occurrat forte, illi non exacte congruum, illud mihi ne imputetur vitiove vertatur rogo. Me enim ad regulas legesque historiæ sollicite componens, ea bona fide collegi



aliorum verba et relationes, quæ sincera maxime deprehendi et fide dignissima. Ad cætera præter elenchum imperatorum legatorumque Romanorum, qui huic insulæ cum imperio præfuerunt, amplius quidquam expectare nolit lector, quocumque meum opus finiam.

Igitur, primus omnium Romanorum dictator Julius cum exercitu, principatu Cassibellini, Britanniam ingressus, quamquam prospera pugna terruerit incolas, ut Tacitus refert, ac littore potitus sit, potest videri ostendisse posteris, non tradidisse.

Mox bella civilia, et in rempublicam versa principum arma, ac longa oblivio Britanniae etiam in pace. Consilium id Augustus vocabat, Tiberius præceptum. Agitasse Caligulam de intranda Britannia satis constat, ni velox ingenio, mobilisque pœnitentia, et ingentes adversus Germaniam conatus frustra fuissent.

Claudius vero Britanniae intulit bellum, quam nullus Romanorum post Julium Cæsarem attigerat, transvectis legionibus auxiliisque, sine ullo prælio ac sanguine, intra paucissimos dies partem insulæ in ditionem recepit. Deinde misit Vespasianum, adhuc in privata vita, qui tricies et bis cum hoste confligit, duas validissimas gentes cum regibus eorum, XX. oppida et insulam Vectem, Britanniae proximam, imperio Romano adjecit. Reliquas devicit per Cnæum Sentium et Aulum Plautium, illustres et nobiles viros, et triumphum celebrem egit.

Subinde Ostorius Scapula, vir bello egregius, qui in formam provinciae proximam partem Britanniae redegit. Addita insuper veteranorum colonia Camalodunum. Quædam civitates Cogiduno regi donatæ; is ad Trajani usque principatum fidelissimus mansit, ut Tacitus scribit.

Mox Avitus Didius Gallus parta a prioribus continuit, paucis admodum castellis in ulteriora promotis, per quæ fama aucti officii quæreretur.

Didium Verannius excepit, isque intra annum exstinctus est.

Suetonius hinc Paulinus biennio prosperas res habuit,

subactis nationibus, firmatisque præsidiis, quorum fiducia Monam insulam, ut vires rebellibus ministrantem, aggressus terga occasione patefecit. Namque legati absentia remoto metu Britones accendere, atque Bonduica, generis regii fœmina, duce, sumpserunt universi bellum; ac sparsos per castella milites consecrati, expugnatis præsidiis, ipsam coloniam invasere, ut sedem servitutis, nec ullum in barbaris sævitiae genus omisit ira et victoria. Quod, nisi Paulinus, eo cognito provinciæ motu prospere subvenisset, amissa Britannia foret, quam unius proelii fortuna veteri patientiæ restituit; tenentibus arma plerisque, quos conscientia defectionis, et proprius ex legato timor, agitabat.

Hic cum egregius cætera, arrogantes in deditos et ut suæ quoque injuriæ ultor, durius consulere; missus Petronius Turpilianus tanquam exorabilior et delictis hostium novus, eoque pœnitentiæ mitior: compositis prioribus, nihil ultra ausus, Trebellio Maximo provinciam tradidit.

Trebellius segnior et nullis castrorum experimentis, comitate quadam curandi, provinciam tenuit. Didicere jam barbari quoque Britones ignoscere vitiis blandientibus; et interventus civilium armorum præbuit justam segnitiae excusationem. Sed discordia laboratum, cum assuetus expeditionibus miles otio lasciviret. Trebellius fuga ac latebris vitata exercitus ira, indecorus atque humilis, præcario mox præfuit, ac velut pacti, exercitus licentiam, dux salutem. Hæc seditio sine sanguine stetit.

Nec Vectius Bolanus manentibus adhuc civilibus bellis, agitavit Britanniam disciplina. Eadem inertia erga hostes, similis petulantia castrorum: nisi quod innocens Bolanus et nullis delictis invisus caritatem paraverat loco autoritatis.

Sed ubi, cum cætero orbe, Vespasianus et Britanniam recuperavit, magni duces, egregii exercitus, minuta hostium spes: et terrorem statim intulit Petilius Ce-



realis, Brigantum civitatem, quæ numerosissima provinciæ totius perhibetur, aggressus. Multa prælia et aliquando non incruenta: magnamque Brigantum partem aut victoria amplexus, aut bello.

Sed cum Cerealis quidem alterius successoris curam famamque obruisset, sustinuit quoque molem Julius Frontinus, vir magnus quantum licebat; validamque et pugnacem Silurum gentem armis subegit, super virtutem hostium locorum quoque difficultates eluctatus.

Successit huic Agricola, qui non solum acquisitam provinciæ pacem constituit, sed etiam annis septem plus minus continuis Caledonios, cum bellicosissimo rege ipsorum Galgaco, debellavit. Quo facto Romanorum ditioni gentes non antea cognitæ adjunxit.

Majorem vero Agricolæ gloriam invidens Domitianus, domum eum revocavit, legatumque suum Lucillum in Britannias misit, quod lanceas novæ formæ appellari Luculeas passus esset.

Successor ejus Trebellius erat, sub quo duæ provinciæ, Vespasiana scilicet et Maëta, fractæ sunt. Romani se ipsos autem luxuriæ dederunt.

Circa idem tempus insulam hancce visitans Hadrianus imperator murum, opus sane mirandum et maxime memorabile, erexit, Juliumque Severum legatum in Britanniis reliquit.

Postea nihil unquam notatu dignum audivimus esse perpetratum, donec Antoninus Pius per legatos suos plurima bella gessit, nam et Britones, per Lollium Urbicum proprætorem et Saturninum præfectum classis, vicit, alio muro, submotis barbaris, ducto. Provinciam postea Valentiae nomine notam revocavit.

Pio mortuo, varias de Britonibus Germanisque victorias reportavit Aurelius Antoninus.

Mortuo autem Antonino, cum ea quæ Romanis ademerant satis non haberent, magnam a legato Marcello passi sunt eladem.

Hic Pertinacem habuit successorem, qui fortem quoque se gessit ducem.

Hunc excepit Clodius Albinus, qui de sceptro et purpura cum Severo contendit.

Post hos primus erat Virius Lupus, qui legati nomine gaudebat. Non huic multa præclara gesta adscribuntur, quippe cujus gloriam interceptit invictissimus Severus, qui, fugatis celeriter hostibus, murum Hadrianeum, nunc ruinosum, ad summam ejus perfectionem reparavit; et, si vixerat, proposuerat exstirpare barbaros, quibus erat infestus, cum eorum nomine, ex hacce insula. Sed obiit, manu Dei, apud Brigantes in municipio Eboraco.

Ejusque in locum subiit Alexander, qui orientis quasdam victorias reportavit, in Edissa (*Sicilia*) mortuus.

Successores habuit legatos Lucilianum, M. Furium, N. Philippum. . . . . qui si defensionem terminorum ab ipsis observatam exceperimus, nil fere egerunt.

Post. . . . .

*Desunt reliqua.*





# A P P E N D I X,

CONTAINING THE

ANCIENT AND MODERN NAMES OF THE STATIONS IN  
THE ITINERARY.—From the London Edit., 8vo, 1809.

ITER I.		SITES OF THE STATIONS.	
(1) A Rhutupi ducta est " <i>Via Guethelinga</i> " dicta, usque in Segontium, per m. p. CCCXXIII plus minus, sic:—			From Richborough to Caer Segont, by the Watling Street.
	<i>Corrected numbers.</i>		
(2) Cantiopoli quæ et Du- roverno X	XI		Canterbury.
(3) Durosevo XII	XII		Stone Chaple, in Ospringe.
(4) Duroprovis XXV	XVI		Rochester.
Deinde m. p. XXVII transis Thamesin in- trasque provinciam et civitatem	XXVII		
(5) Londinium Augustam			London.
(6) Sulo Mago VIII	XII		On the site of Mr. Napier's house at Brockley Hill.
(7) Verolamio Municipio XII Unde fuit Amphibalus et Albanus, martyres.	VIII		Verulam.
(8) Foro Dianæ XII	XII		Dunstable.
(9) Magio Vinio XII	XII		Old Fields, S. of Fenny Stratford.
(10) Lactorodo XII	XVI		Berry Mount, in Towcester.
(11) Isanta Varia XII	XII		Burnt walls near Daventry.
(12) Tripontio XII	XII		Near Lilbourn.
(13) Benonis VIII Hic bisecatur Via; alterutrumque ejus brachium Lindum usque, alterum ver- sus Viriconium pro- tenditur, sic:—	VIII		High Cross.
(14) Manduessedo XII	XII		Manceter.
(15) Etoceto XIII	XVI		Wall.
(16) Pennocrucio XII	XII		On the Penk.
(17) Uxaconia XII	XII		Red Hill, near Okenyate.
(18) Virioconio XI	XI		Wroxeter.
(19) Banchorio XXVI	XXVI		Probably Banchor.
(20) Deva Colonia X Fines Flaviæ et Se- cundæ	XV		Chester.
(21) Varis XXX	XXVII		Banks of the Clwydd, near Bodfari.
(22) Conovio XX	XX		Caer Hân.
(23) Segontio XXIII	XXIII		Caer Segont, near Caer- narvon.



The first Iter having run uniformly on the traces of the British Watling Street before described (except the small distance from Southfleet to London), and the road remaining tolerably perfect, there can be little difficulty in fixing the several stations, or indeed in correcting the sometimes corrupted numbers of the Itinerary. It begins at Richborough, and, although at present obscure from the improved cultivation of the country, may be easily traced to Canterbury, from whence it went in the direction of the present turnpike to Rochester, leaving the intermediate station at Stone Chaple, in Ospringe, a little to the left hand. At Rochester it passed the Medway, considerably above the present bridge, and instead of running to the right with the modern turnpike, it went as straight as the nature of the ground would permit, by Cobham Park, and Shinglewell, to Barkfields, in Southfleet (the station *Vagniacis* in Antonine), then to Swanscombe Parkwood, through which it passed, and rejoined the Dover road between the fifteenth and sixteenth milestone, near Dartford Brent. Hence it went by Shooter's Hill over the Thames to London; and then, as before mentioned, by the site of Mr. Napier's house at Brockley Hill, Verulam, Dunstable, Fenny Stratford, Towcester, Burnt Walls,\* near Lilbourne, High Cross, Manceter, Wall, Okenyate, to Wroxeter. Here, quitting the south-west branch of the Watling Street, it bore to the right by Uffington, Broughton, Overley, Hammer, and Sarn Bridge to Banchor; and from thence ran clearly by Stockach and Aldford, over the Dee to Chester.

The Roman road here joining the North-east Watling Street, before mentioned, continued with it to Bodfari, and crossing Denbighshire, went over the Conway to *Caer Hûn*; and is supposed to have run as straight as the country would permit, to *Caer Segont*, about half a mile south of *Caernarvon*.

ITER II.			SITES OF THE STATIONS.
(23) A Segontio Virioconium usque, m. p. LXXIII. sic :—			From <i>Caer Segont</i> to <i>Wroxeter</i> .
		<i>Corrected numbers.</i>	
(24) Heriri Monte	XXV	XXV	<i>Tommen y Mur</i> , in <i>Maentrwg</i> .
(25) Mediolano	XXV	XXVII	On the bank of the <i>Tanad</i> .
(26) Rutunio	XII	XVI	<i>Rowton</i> .
(18) Virioconio	XI	XI	<i>Wroxeter</i> .

\* Burnt Walls was the Roman post of *Isannavaria*; Borough Hill, on the hill above it, was the great British fortification, *Bennavenna*.

This Iter runs on a branch of the South-east Watling Street, from *Caer Segont*, nearly in the direction of the present road to *Tommen y Mur*, an undoubted station in the parish of *Maentwrg*, by the common name of *Sarn Helen*, or the "paved way of the Legion." From hence it is continued to *Bala*; and on the banks of the *Tanad*, not far from the point where it is intersected by the Roman road from *Caersws* to *Chester*, was probably the lost town of *Mediolanum*. From *Mediolanum* the road runs under the north end of the *Brythen*, straight, although obscurely, to *Rowton*, and from thence over the *Severn* to *Wroxeter*.

ITER III.		SITES OF THE STATIONS.	
(5) A Londinio Lindum coloniam usque, sic:—		From London to Lincoln.	
		<i>Corrected numbers.</i>	
(27) Durosito	XII	XII	Near Rumford.
(28) Cæsaro Mago	XVI	XVI	Near Chelmsford.
(29) Canonio	XV	XV	On the east of Kelvedon.
(30) Camaloduno Colonia	VIIII	VIIII	Colchester.
Ibi erat templum Claudii, arx tri- umphalis, et imago Victoriæ deæ.			
(31) Ad Sturium amnem	VI	VI	Banks of the Stour.
Et finibus Trinobantum Cenimannos advenis			
(32) Cambretonio	XV		
(33) Sito Mago	XXII		
(34) Venta Cenom.	XXIII		Castor, near Norwich.
* . . . . .			
(35) Camborico Colonia	XX		North side of the Cam, Cam- bridge.
(36) Duraliponte †	XX	XV	Godmanchester.
(37) Durno Mago ‡	XX	XX	Castor.
			Durobrivis was Chesterton on the Nen, near it.
(38) Isinis §	XX	XXV	Ancaster.
(39) Lindo	XX	XXI	Lincoln.

As it is fifty-one measured miles from London to Colchester, and as it is probable that the stone from whence the Roman miles were measured was at least one mile west of Whitechapel church, we cannot allow any material deviation from the course of the present road, except in the neighbourhood of the capital, where the Roman

\* *Icianis* XXVIII. *Stukeley*. † *Durolisponde*, Iter 17. ‡ Iter 17, XXX.  
§ *Corisennis* XXX. Iter 17. || Iter 17, XXX.



road, instead of passing through Mile End, went much straighter over the Lee at Old Ford, and fell again into the course of the present turnpike at Stratford. The Itinerary allowing only fifty-two miles between London and Colchester, and the fifth Iter of Antonine agreeing with this of Richard, by stating twenty-eight as the distance between London and *Cæsaromagus*, we may implicitly adopt the distances here given, and fix the intermediate stations near Rumford, Chelmsford, and Kelvedon. From Colchester the road ran to the Stour, where probably stood the *Mansio ad Ansam*. From hence to Castor, near Norwich, (the *Venta Icenorum*), the stations and course of the road are unknown. Some commentators have supposed it ran westerly, by Brettenham and Thetford; others by Ipswich, Stowmarket, and Scole Inn; and others have carried it more easterly, by Ipswich and Blythburgh, or Dunwich, to the capital of the Iceni. In favour of the first, there is merely the supposed resemblance of the name of Brettenham to *Cambretonium*; of the second, traces of a Roman way, called the Pye Road; and of the third, a British track-way, and another Roman road, called the Stone Street. But the distances suit none of these sites, and no Roman remains have any where been found, between the Stour and Castor, sufficient to justify an alteration of the numerals.

*Icianis* may have been Icklingham; and *Camboricum* was most probably at Cambridge, from whence there is a Roman road discoverable to Lincoln. To the first station, Godmanchester, this Iter goes on the great communication between Colchester and Chester, which for the sake of distinction may be called the *Via Devana*; and from Godmanchester to Lincoln, on the eastern branch of the Ermyrn Street, which was adopted by the Romans. Twenty miles from Godmanchester, we find the great station of Chesterton, on one side of the Nen, and Castor on the other; which probably gave rise to the two names of *Durobrivæ*, and *Durnomagus*, the Roman and British towns severally noticed by Antonine and Richard. About twenty-five miles further, in the course of the road, which cannot be mistaken, we find Ancaster, the *Isinnis*, *Corisennis*, or *Causennis* of the Itineraries, from whence twenty-one additional miles bring us to Lincoln.

ITER IV.			SITES OF THE STATIONS.
(39) A Lindo ad Vallum usque, sic :—			From Lincoln to the Wall.
		<i>Corrected numbers.</i>	
(40) Argolico	XIIII	XIIII	Littleborough.
(41) Dano	XX	XXI	Doncaster.
Ibi intras Maximam Cæsariensem			
(42) Legotio * m. p. XVI		XVI	Castleford.
(43) Eburaco Municip. olim Colonia Sexta†	XXI	XXI	York.
(44) Isurio	XVI	XVII	Aldborough.
(45) Cattaractoni‡	XXIIII	XXIIII	Catterick.
(46) Ad Tisam	X	XII	Pierce Bridge.
(47) Vinovio	XII	X	Binchester.
(48) Epiaco	XVIII }	XIIII	Lanchester.
(49) Ad Murum	VIII }	VIII	Halton Chester on the Wall.
trans Murum intras Valentiam			
(50) Alauna amne	XXV	XXV	Banks of the Coquet.
(51) Tueda flumine	XXX	XXXV	Banks of the Tweed.
(52) Ad Vallum			The Wall.

The fourth Iter left Lincoln with the Eastern Ermyn Street, which ran to the Humber; and, after continuing on it about five miles, turned suddenly to the left, pursuing its course in a straight line to the Trent, which it passed immediately opposite to the station of Littleborough. The Roman road may be traced from hence to Austerfield and Doncaster, where it fell in with the Western Ermyn Street, and is visible all the way by Castleford, Aberford, and Tadcaster, to York. In this Iter, the station of Tadcaster is passed unnoticed, as in the former the station of Brig Casterton, near Stamford.

From York the Iter is continued along the left bank of the Ouse, till it crossed the river to Aldborough. From hence re-joining the Western Ermyn Street, it passed the Eure, and ran straight through Catterick to the Tees, which it crossed at Pierce-bridge. It continued by the Royal Oak, St. Andrew Aukland, and the Bishop's Park, to Binchester, where, after fording the Were, it went with the North Watling Street to Lanchester; and, without noticing either Ebchester or Corbridge, over the Tyne to Halton Chester on the Wall. Here separating from the North Watling Street, it ran with the Ermyn Street, now known in Northumberland by the name of the Devil's Causeway, to the bank of the Coquet, and the Tweed, and entering Scotland on the East, was continued to the wall of Antonine.

\* Legiolio, Iter 18.

† Iter 5 and 8, Eburaco.

‡ Cataractone XL.



ITER V.		SITES OF THE STATIONS.	
(52) A Limite Præturiam usque, sic :—		To Flamborough Head.	
		<i>Corrected numbers.</i>	
(53) Curia *			
(54) Ad fines			Chew Green.
(55) Bremenio		VII	Riechester.
(56) Corstoplio	XX	XXV	Corbridge.
(57) Vindomora	VIII	VIII	Ebchester.
(47) Vindovio †	XVIII	XVIII	Binchester.
(45) Cattaractoni	XXII	XXII	Catterick.
(43) Eboraco	XL	XL	York.
(58) Derventione	VII	VII	On the Derwent, near Stamford Bridge.
(59) Delgovicia	‡ XIII		. . . . .
(60) Prætorio	‡ XXV	XXXVIII	Near Flamborough Head.

In regard to part of the country traversed by this Iter, there appears to have been so little connection between the work of our author and the map which accompanies it, that we can rely little on the latter either to assist or correct us. This Iter is made to begin from *Curia*, a town probably on the confines of some petty kingdom, and to pass to the first certain post of *Bremenium*, or *Riechester*. Now, on referring to the map, *Curia*, the principal town of the *Gadeni*, so far from lying on the road which leads to *Bremenium*, the capital of the *Ottadini*, is considerably to the westward of its course. From this disagreement, commentators have suspected a mistake of the transcriber, and imagine that *Curia* is intended for *Corium*. It is certain, at least, that this Iter, running on the east side of the island, on the track of the Northern Watling Street, enters Northumberland at Chew Green, goes from thence to *Riechester* (leaving unnoticed the station at *Risingham*), and runs with it to *Corbridge*, *Ebchester*, *Binchester*, *Catterick*, and *York*.

From *York* to *Flamborough Head*, a Roman road may still be traced; and as the distance agrees with the Itinerary, and there must have been a Roman post on or near that headland, we should think it more probable that this was the site of *Præturium*, § although we have not yet discovered the remains of any post on the *Derwent*, or the intermediate station of *Delgovicia*. So many Roman roads from different quarters point towards *Stamford bridge*, that there is no doubt the station of *Derventio* was near it.

\* Probably *Corium*, *Stukeley*. † *Vinovio*, Iter 4. ‡ XXXVIII.

§ This *Præturium* and the *Prætorium* of Antonine must be carefully distinguished from the *Petuaria*, mentioned by our author in the 17th Iter, for *Petuaria* was certainly at *Brough* on the *Humber*.

ITER VI.		SITES OF THE STATIONS.	
(43) Ab Eboraco Devam usque, sic :—		From York to Chester.	
	<i>Corrected numbers.</i>		
(61) Calcaria m. p. VIIII	VIIII	Tadcaster.	
(62) Camboduno XXII	XXXII	Slack.	
(63) Mancunio* XVIII	XXIII	Manchester.	
(64) Finibus Maximæ et Flaviæ XVIII	VI	Stretford on Mersey.	
(65) Condate* XVIII	XXIII	Kinderton.	
(20) Deva XVIII	XVIII	Chester.	

Such appears to be the incorrectness of the numerals attached to this Iter, as well as to the corresponding Iter of Antonine, that, although four of the six stations are well known, and a fifth can scarcely be mistaken, yet we can no other way obviate the difficulty than by supposing a station omitted, or by altering the numerals, none of which, except the first, agree with the distances between the vestiges of the different stations and their supposed sites ; for example, in the first part between York and Manchester, where the Itinerary gives only 49 miles, the nearest road through Heathersfield amounts to 65.

As the only great and undoubted Roman station between Tadcaster and Manchester is at Slack (for the camps at Kirklees, and Castleshaw, are only temporary posts), it will perhaps be justifiable to fix this point as the site of *Cambodunum* ; to suppose ten miles omitted in this stage ; and in the next to conjecture that, by a common error in copying the Roman numerals, XVIII. has been substituted for XXIII. the exact distance from Slack to Manchester.

As the Mersey was undoubtedly the boundary on the West between the Roman provinces of Maxima and Flavia, and as the Roman road still existing crossed it at Stretford, we fix the next point there, and change the number XVII. to VI. The two next stations of *Condate* and *Deva*, the numerals (with a slight alteration) permit us to fix at Kinderton and Chester. It is worthy of remark, that with these alterations the sum total of the numerals remains nearly the same.

\* Iter 10, Mancunio—Condate XXIII.



ITER VII.				SITES OF THE STATIONS.
(66)	A Portu Sistuntiorum Eboracum usque, sic :—			From Freckleton to York.
(67)	Rerigonio	XXIII	XIII	Ribchester.
(68)	Ad Alpes Peninos	VIII	XXIII	Burrens in Broughton.
(69)	Alicana	X	X	Ilkley.
(44)	Isurio *	XVIII	XVIII	Aldborough.
(43)	Eboraco	XVI	XVII	York.

This Iter runs from Freckleton on the Ribble to Ribchester, and then over the mountains to Broughton, Ilkley, Aldborough, and York. As the Roman road is tolerably perfect all the way to Aldborough, and the vestiges of the stations are undoubted, we are justified in the alteration of the two first numbers, as by this alteration they will correspond with the present distances and the situations of the posts.

ITER VIII.				SITES OF THE STATIONS.
(43)	Ab Eboraco Luguvalium usque, sic :—			From York to Carlisle.
(45)	Cattaractoni	XL	XL	Catterick.
(70)	Lataris	† XVI	XVIII	Bowes.
(71)	Vataris	‡ XVI	XVIII	Brough.
(72)	Brocavonacis § XVIII (Brovonacis)		XIII	Kirby Thur.
(73)	Vorreda	XVIII	XVIII	Plumpton Wall.
(74)	Lugubalia	XVIII	XIII	Carlisle.

The road from York to Catterick has been traced before, and the Roman way from thence to Carlisle ran nearly in the direction of the present turnpike. The only doubt which occurs, therefore, in this Iter, is whether, from a similarity of sound, the transcriber of Richard has not erroneously written Brocavonacis for Brovonacis, which are two neighbouring posts in this direction, the first Brougham, and the second Kirby Thur. As the conjecture is not improbable, the corrected distance is given from the latter.

It is worthy of observation that in this Iter four successive V's have been added by mistake of the transcriber, as is the case in regard to the X's omitted in the third Iter.

\* Stukeley, XVIII.

† Lataris XVII. Stuk.

‡ XVI. Stuk.

§ XX. Stuk.

|| Iter 10 inverted, Brocavonacis—Luguvallia, XXII.

ITER IX.			SITES OF THE STATIONS.
(74) A	Luguballio	Ptorotonim usque, sic :—	From Carlisle to Burgh Head.
(75)	Trimontio	m. p.	Birrenswork Hill.
(76)	Gadanica		
(77)	Corio		
(52)	Ad Vallum		Camelon.
	Incipit Vespasiana		
(78)	Alauna	XII	XIII Kier.
(79)	Lindo	VIII	VIII Ardoch.
(80)	Victoria	VIII	VIII Dealgin Ross.
(81)	Ad Hiernam	VIII	VIII Strageth.
(82)	Orrea	XIII	XIII On the Tay above Perth.
(83)	Ad Tavum	XVIII	XVIII Near Invergowrie.
(84)	Ad Æsicam	XXIII	XXIII Brechin on South Esk.
(85)	Ad Tinam	VIII	VIII Fordun.
(86)	Devana	XXIII	XXIII Norman Dikes near Peter Culter.
(87)	Ad Itunam	XXIII	XXVI Glenmailin on the Ithan.
(88)	Ad Montem	Grampium	XIII Near Knock Hill.
(89)	Ad Selinam		X On the Cullen near Deskford.
(90)	Tuessis	XVIII	XVII On the Spey near Bellie.
(91)	Ptorotone		XVII Burgh Head.

Innumerable difficulties occur on every side in endeavouring to explain this Iter. There is great reason to believe that the *Trimontium* of this Iter was Birrenswork Hill, and that the road ran from thence along the western side of the island as it is traced in the map of Richard. Camelon is allowed by all antiquaries to be the *Ad Vallum* : but it is impossible to draw the line between these two points ; for although General Roy has mentioned a road from Carlisle on the eastern side of the Eildon Hills, and another on the western beyond Cleghorn to Castle Cary, there is little authority for the existence of either. Lynekirk has every appearance of a station, lay within the territories of the Gadeni, and would suit the situation assigned to *Gadanica*, but no road has hitherto been discovered leading to or from it. If the western trended at Biggar as much to the east, as that part which remains in the direction of Glasgow does to the West, it would have passed Borthwich Castle or the Gore, which Roy supposes was the *Corium*. Admitting the identity of this station would clear up the whole of this Iter to the Wall. There is no doubt that the sites of *Lindum*, *Victoria*, and *Ad Hiernam* were at Ardoch, Dealgin Ross, and Strageth.

Notwithstanding the difficulties which occur in tracing this Iter from Carlisle to the Wall, yet from thence to the Tay the direction of the road, and the situation of the stations as fixed by General Roy agree so perfectly with the Itinerary, as to leave no doubt



that he has ascertained their real position. But although he discovered a road north of the Tay, yet, as he found no vestiges of stations, Mr. Chalmers seems to have been more successful in fixing the posts between that river and *Ptoroton*.

It does not appear that the road was ever completed: however, from *Orrea* on the Tay, a little above Perth, he observes, that the communication ran through the passage of the Sidlaw Hills, and along the Carse of Gowrie to the north end of the æstuary of the Tay near Dundee; two miles west of which place, and half a mile north of Invergowrie, are the remains of a Roman camp about two hundred yards square, fortified with a high rampart and spacious ditch. Here he places *Ad Tavum*. Proceeding hence north-easterly through the natural opening of the country, and passing in the way the camp at Harefaulds, at the distance of twenty-three miles is Brechin on the South Esk, the station *Ad Æsicam*, exactly in the line laid down in Richard's map, and at the distance given in the Itinerary. Continuing from the South Esk in a north-north-easterly direction, at the distance of five miles and a half, we reach the North Esk, the supposed *Ad Tinam*. We pass that river at King's Ford, and proceeding up the valley of Lutherwater, at the distance of eight miles and a half find Fordun, where there are the remains of two Roman camps. From thence proceeding seventeen miles, to the well known camp at Raedikes, and continuing in a northerly direction six miles beyond, is the rectangular camp on the Dee at Peter Culter, called Norman Dikes, the *Devana* of the Iter. This point is exactly thirty-one miles from Brechin on the South Esk, agrees with the aggregate distances in the Itinerary *Ad Tinam* VIII, and *Ad Devanam* XXIII, and corresponds with the track delineated on Richard's map.

The obvious openings through this rugged country point out the way by which the Romans must have penetrated northerly by the right of Achlea Fiddy and Kinmundy, to Kintore on the Don. They followed the Strath to the ford where the high road has always passed to Inverurie, and proceeded north-north-west through the moorlands, to the sources of the Ithan, and the camp at Glenmailin, the *Ituna* of Richard, a distance of twenty-six miles. From thence proceeding northward, across the Doverna at Achen-goul, where are still considerable remains of military works; and at the distance of thirteen miles, we reach the high ground north of Foggy lone, at the east side of Knock Hill, the *Mons Grampius* of the Iter.

Hence the road runs to *Ad Selinam*, which is supposed to be on the Cullen, near the old Tower of Deskford, at the distance of ten miles. Following the course of the river, and the coast of the

Murray Frith, seventeen miles, we arrive at the Roman post of *Tuessis*, on the high bank of the Spey, below the church of Bellie. Seventeen miles further is Burgh Head, the *Ptorotone* of Richard.

ITER X.		SITES OF THE STATIONS.	
(91) Ab ultima Ptorotone per mediam insulæ Isca Damnonorum usque, sic :—		From Burgh Head, through the middle of the island to Exeter.	
	<i>Corrected numbers.</i>		
(92) Varis* m. p. VIII	Names and Numbers from Gen. Roy.	Fores	VIII
(93) Ad Tuessim XVIII		Cromdall on Spey	XX
(94) Tamea XXVIII		Braemar Castle	XXX
(95) ———— XXI		Barra Castle on Ila	XXX
(96) In Medio VIII		Inchstuthill	XII
(82) Orrea VIII		Bertha on Tay	VIII
(80) Victoria XVIII		Dealgin Ross	XXIII
(52) Ad Vallum† XXXII		Camelon	XXXII
(74) Luguballia LXXX		Carlisle	CXVIII
(97) Brocavonacis XXII	XXII	Brougham.	
(98) Ad Alaunam . . . .	XXXXVII	Lancaster.	
(99) Coccio . . . .	XXXVI	Blackrode.	
(63) Mancunio XVIII	XVIII	Manchester.	
(65) Condate XXIII	XXIII	Kinderton.	
(100) Mediolano XVIII	XVI	Chesterton.	
(15) Etoceto . . . .	XXXV	Wall.	
(101) Salinis m. p. . . .	XXII	Droitwich.	
(102) Glebon Colon. m. p.	XXXIII	Gloucester.	
(103) Corino XIII	XVIII	Cirencester.	
(104) Aquas Solis m. p. . .	XXX	Bath.	
(105) Ad Aquas XVIII	XX	Probably Wells.	
(106) Ad Uxellam amnem m. p. . . .	XXI	Probably Bridgewater.	
(107) Isca m. p. . . .	XXXXV	Exeter.	

The first part of this Iter is taken from General Roy; and as we have none of the intermediate stations between Carlisle and the Wall, every commentator may choose what route he pleases, although none will coincide with the distances of the Itinerary. From Carlisle, if we place any reliance on the numbers, the next station, *Brocavonacis*, can only be fixed at Brougham. Thence the road to the banks of the Lune, as well as the station on it, is uncertain; for, whether we choose Overborough or Lancaster, we

\* VIII. Stukeley.

† XXX. Iter 9.



know of no road to direct us; and the only reason for preferring the latter is the supposed site of the next station, *Coccium*, at Blackrode, and the course of the road through Lancaster, tending more immediately to that point, than the road through Overborough. The two next stations, *Mancunium* and *Condate*, as well as the connecting line of road, are well known. From Kinderton, although there is a Roman way pointing to Chesterton in Staffordshire, the *Mediolanum* of this Iter, and the site of *Etocetum* is undoubtedly Wall, yet we speak with hesitation of the line of communication betwixt them; though we presume it ran through Newcastle, Stone, and Ridgeley. From Wall, which is on the Watling Street, the Iter continues along the Rykniel Street, through Sutton Colfield Park, to Birmingham. There falling in with the first Salt-Way, it proceeds to Droitwich, and is continued by the Western Road, through Worcester to Gloucester. Here, turning nearly at a right angle, it passes by the well known Roman road over Birdlip Hill to Cirencester; and trending to the right, proceeds by the Foss to *Aquæ Solis* or Bath. Quitting the Foss, and still bearing to the right, it continues along the lower road to Wells, and from thence to *Uxella*, which was probably at Bridgewater. From the banks of the Parret it ran in the track of the British Way, and the present turnpike by Taunton, Wellington, and Collumpton, to Exeter.

ITER XI.		SITES OF THE STATIONS.	
(104) Ab Aquis, per Viam Juliam, Menapiam usque, sic :—		From Bath by the Julian Way to St. David's.	
(108) Ad Abonam m. p. VI	Corrected numbers. VI } VIII }	Bitton.	
(109) Ad Sabrinam VI Unde Trajectu* intras in Britanniam Secundam		Sea Mills.	
(110) Et Stationem Trajectum† III	III	Severn Side.	
(111) Venta Silurum‡ VIII	VIII	Caerwent.	
(112) Isca Colonia VIII Unde fuit Aaron Martyr.	VIII	Caerleon.	
(113) Tibia Amne§ VIII	XV	Banks of the Taaf, possibly Caireu or Caerdiff.	

\* Statio Trajectus. Comm.

† VIII. Stuk.

† Ad Sabrinam. Comm.

§ Tibia VII. Stuk.

ITER XI.—*continued.*

(114)	Bovio	XX	XX	In Evenny Park.
(115)	Nido	XV	XX	Near Neath.
(116)	Leucaro	XV	X	Perhaps Lwghor.
	(Muridunum	omitt.		
		XX)	XX	Caermarthen.
(117)	Ad Vigesium	XX	XX	Castel Flemish.*
(118)	Ad Menapiam	XVIII	XVIII	Near St. David's.
	Ab hac urbe	per m. p.		
		XXX		
	Navigas in	Hyberniam.		

As the course of the Roman road connecting the stations of this Iter is still discernible, we do not hesitate in correcting the imperfections of Richard by the corresponding Iter of Antonine. At Bitton, six miles from Bath, we find marks of a post attended with *tumuli*, which whether called *Abone* or *Trajectus*† is of little importance, because, like the next, Sea Mills, it will suit either appellation, from its position on the Avon, and commanding a passage over that river. From Bitton the Roman way ran nearly in the direction of the present turnpike, north of the river as far as St. George's church; thence it proceeded straight near St. Paul's; ascended the Downs behind Mr. Daubeney's house to the direction-post, from whence it crossed Durdham Down, and skirted Mrs. Jackson's park wall to Sea Mills, a great maritime post at the confluence of the Trim and the Avon. It continued by Lord De Clifford's house straight to the Severn, crossed that river, and passed by Caldecot Castle through Caerwent and Caerleon to the bank of the Taaf and Eweny Park, which last place Roman remains lead us to conjecture was the site of *Borium*. At Neath we have also little hesitation in fixing the site of *Nidus*, because a road from the *Gaer* near *Brecon* evidently leads to the same spot.

The remainder of this Iter is obscure. *Leucaro* has been fixed at Lwghor, principally from the resemblance of the name. From thence the road may have run to Caermarthen (*Maridunum*), which appears to have been omitted; and was probably continued as straight as the country would permit to Castel Flemish and St.

\* This station has been recently discovered by Mr. Fenton during his researches for his History of Pembrokeshire, which is shortly to be published. It lies in the parish of Ambleston.

† We prefer the name of *Abone* for Sea Mills, because it bears that name in old deeds; on the other hand, there appears to be no instance in which the name of *Trajectus* is applied to a town unless at the passage of a river.



David's, where we would place the stations *Vigesimum* and *Menapia*.\*

ITER XII.			SITES OF THE STATIONS.
(104) Ab Aquis Londinium usque, sic :—			
		<i>Corrected numbers.</i>	
(119) Verlucione m. p.	XV	XV	Highfield, near Sandy Lane.
(120) Cunetione	XX	XV	Folly Farm, E. of Marlborough.
(121) Spinis	XV	XX	Spene.
(122) Calleba Attrebatum	XV		Silchester.
(123) Bibracte	XX	XXXXIIII	London.
(5) Londinio	XX		

As the traces of a Roman road from Bath towards Marlborough are still visible, we have only to examine in what points of its course remains have been found sufficient to justify us in determining the sites of the different stations. Accordingly, at fifteen miles from Bath we have Highfield, in Sandy Lane, near Heddington; and at fifteen more Folly Farm, near Marlborough. From hence twenty miles bring us to Spene; and although at this place few remains have been discovered, yet the direction of another Roman road, from Cirencester to the same point, sufficiently proves the existence of a station. Of the site of *Calleba* at Silchester † there can be little doubt; although the course of the road

\* The bishops of St. David's being called in Latin *Menapienses* by the earliest of our ecclesiastical writers, is an argument that the station is near the present town. The site of the station itself was probably at a short distance from the modern city, at a place called the Burrows, and just above a fine harbour called the Porth Mawr.

† Few of the Roman stations have been fixed at so many different places as that of *Calleba Attrebatum*. It has been placed at Silchester, Henley, Wallingford, and Reading, by different antiquaries; yet in no doubtful case do more testimonies concur to ascertain the site. It was evidently a station of importance, because it appears as a central point, to which the roads traversed by three different Iters of Antonine (the 13th, 14th, and 15th,) converge. It was the capital of the Attrebates; situated at known distances from London, Winchester, Bath, Spene, and Caerleon; and at a doubtful one, though easily supplied, from Cirencester and Old Sarum. These circumstances cannot by any expedient be brought to coincide, either with Henley, Wallingford, or Reading; but all agree in regard to Silchester. Its distance nearly accords with the Itinerary distance of *Calleba* from London, Bath, Spene, Winchester,

from Spene is uncertain. The road from Silchester, still known by the name of the Devil's Causeway, as it runs over Bagshot Heath, as well as evident traces of it between Staines and London, still exist; but the intermediate station of *Bibracte* is doubtful. If the numbers in this Iter be correct, we cannot deviate from the straight line, and this post must be placed near the hill at Egham, or the head of the Virginia Water.

ITER XIII.			SITES OF THE STATIONS.
(112) Ab Isca Uriconium usque, sic:—			From Caerleon to Wroxeter.
		<i>Corrected numbers.</i>	
(124) Bultro m. p.	VIII	VIII	Usk.
(125) Gobannio	XII	XII	Abergavenny.
(126) Magna	XXIII	XXIII	Kentchester.
(127) Branogenio	XXIII	XXIII	Lentwardine.
(18) Urioconio	XXVII	XXVII	Wroxeter.

The beginning of this Iter cannot be traced, notwithstanding two out of the three stations are well known; and we have little doubt that *Bultrum* or *Burrium* was at Usk (though no Roman remains have been found there), because the distance given from Caerleon to *Gobannium* or Abergavenny will not admit of any deviation from the straight line. From Abergavenny, after passing the Munnow, the Roman road still exists, particularly near Madley, pointing to Kentchester, and from thence may be traced by the next post of Lentwardine on the Teme, to Wroxeter.

and Caerleon, and, if a station (which is evidently lost) in the Iter of Antonine be supplied, with that from Cirencester. The present remains are those of a great Roman town; it is situated in the district formerly inhabited by the Atrebrates; and in every direction traces of Roman roads converging to this point still plainly exist, from London, Spene, Winchester, Old Sarum, Bath, and Cirencester.



ITER XIV.			SITES OF THE STATIONS.
(112) Ab Isca, per Glebon, Lindum usque, sic :—			From Caerleon, by Gloucester, to Lincoln.
		<i>Corrected numbers.</i>	
(124) Ballio* m. p. VIII			Usk.
(128) Blestio XII	XIII		Monmouth.
(129) Sariconio XI	XII		Rose or Berry Hill in Weston.
(102) Glebon Colonia XV	XV		Gloucester.
(130) Ad Antonam XV	XX		On the Avon.
(131) Alauna XV	XV		Alcester on the Ala.
(121) ——— . . .	XVIII		Camp at Chesterton on the Foss, near Harwood's house.
(13) Vennonis XII	XXI		High Cross.
(133) Ratiscorion XII	XII		Leicester.
(134) Venromento XII	XII		Willoughby.
(135) Margiduno XII	XII		East Bridgeford.
(136) Ad Pontem XII	VII		Near Thorpe turnpike.
(137) Crococolana VII	VII		Brugh.
(39) Lindum XII	XII		Lincoln.

This Iter ran, like the former, from Caerleon to Usk, where bending to the right it traversed the country to Monmouth. From hence, although we cannot trace the exact line of the road, yet we have no doubt that it crossed the Wye to the next station at Berry Hill, in Weston, under Penyard ; and continued nearly in a direct line to Gloucester. As the author has only left the name of a river for the next station, it must be placed in such a situation on the Avon as to admit the distance of fifteen miles from the next station of Alcester, which was the site of *Alauna*. This would carry it to the westward of Evesham. From Alcester likewise, till we reach the Foss, we have neither a road nor distance, nor even the name of a station. For this reason we deem ourselves justified in considering the undoubted Roman camp at Chesterton on the Foss, as the post omitted by our author, and from thence we proceed on that known military way to the certain stations of High Cross, Leicester, Willoughby, Bridgeford, Brough, and Lincoln.

\* Bultro, It. 13.

ITER XV.		SITES OF THE STATIONS.	
(5) A Londinio, per Clausentum, in Londinium usque, sic:—		From London, through Bittern, again to London.	
(122) Caleba m. p. XLIIII	Corrected numbers. XLIIII	Silchester.	
(138) Vindomi XV	XV	Near St. Mary Bourne.	
(139) Venta Belgarum XXI	XXI	Winchester.	
(140) Ad Lapidem VI	VI	Stoneham.	
(141) Clausento IIII	IIII	Bittern, near Southampton.	
(142) Portu Magno X	XV	Portchester.	
(143) Regno X	XV	Chichester.	
(144) Ad Decimum X	X	On the Arun.	
(145) Anderida Portu . . .	*XLV	Pevensey.	
(146) Ad Lemanum XXV	XXV	On the Rother.	
(147) Lemaniano Portu X	XX	Lymne.	
(148) Dubris X	X	Dover.	
(1) Rhutupis Colonia X	XV	Richborough.	
(149) Regulbio X	VIIII	Reculver.	
(2) Contiopoli X	X	Canterbury.	
(3) Durelevo XVIII	XII	Stone Chaple in Ospringe.	
(150) Mado XII	XVIII	On the bank of the Medway.	
(151) Vagnaca XVIII	VIIII	Barkfields in Southfleet.	
(152) Novio Mago XVIII	XV	Holwood Hill.	
(5) Londinio XV	XV	London.	

This Iter leads from London to the south-west part of Hampshire, and from thence, skirting the Sussex and Kentish coasts, back to the capital.

At the first step the author gives forty-four miles as the distance between London and Silchester, instead of forty, as in the 12th Iter; hence we may deviate a little in settling the site of *Bibracte* or *Ad Pontes*. Of the next station we can merely offer a conjecture. As the country of the Attrebates and their capital *Calleva*, or Silchester, is by our author described as lying near the Thames, in distinction from that of the Segontiaci,† whose capital, *Vindomis*, was further distant from that river, and nearer the Kennet, one point only appears to suit the distances, which bears the proper relation to the neighbouring stations, and at the same time falls at the intersection of two known Roman roads. This is in the neighbourhood of St. Mary Bourne, and affords reason for considering Egbury Camp, or some spot near it, as the capital of the Segontiaci. For by following the Roman road called the Portway from Silchester, at the distance of fifteen miles is the

\* *Stukeley*, X.

† Richard, b. 1, c. 6, sect. 28, describing the several nations whose territories were watered by the Thames in its course to the German Ocean, places the Attrebates between the Hedui and the Cassii, without even mentioning the Segontiaci: a proof that their territories did not approach the river.



rivulet near St. Mary Bourne, and not far from it, the point where the Portway is intersected by the Roman road from Winchester to Cirencester; and proceeding along this last we have another distance of twenty-one miles to Winchester. The road from Winchester by Otterbourne to Stoneham, and thence by the Green Lane to Bittern, is well known, and the distance sufficiently exact. But from thence, although traces of the road are occasionally discoverable on Ridgeway, and to the north of Bursledon Hill, pointing towards Fareham and Portchester, yet the latter part is almost totally unknown or lost. From Portchester it ran in the track of the present turnpike to Chichester; and over the Arun not far from Arundel; and then along the coast to Pevensy, the banks of the Rother, Lymne, Dover, Richborough, Reculver, and Canterbury. There falling into the track of the first Iter, it went along the Watling Street to the bank of the Medway, and passing that river, proceeded by Barkfields in Southfleet, a station omitted before, across the country with the ancient Watling Street, (by a road now unknown,\*) to Holwood Hill, the capital of the Regni, and from thence to London.

ITER XVI.		SITES OF THE STATIONS.	
(5) A Londinio Ceniam usque, sic :—		From London to the Fal.	
		<i>Corrected numbers.</i>	
(139) Venta Belgarum m. p. XC	LXXX	Winchester.	
(153) Brige XI	XI	Near Broughton.	
(154) Sorbioduno VIII	VIII	Old Sarum.	
(155) Ventageladia XII	XV	Gussage Cow Down.	
(156) Durnovaria VIII	XXX	Dorchester.	
(157) Moriduno XXXIII	XXX	Seaton.	
(107) Isca Damnon XV	XXVIII	Exeter.	
(158) Durio Amne . . .	XXIII	On the Dart.	
(159) Tamara . . .	XXVI	On the Tamar.	
(160) Voluba . . .	XXVIII	On the Fowey.	
(161) Cenia . . .	XX	On the Fal.	

\* In Hasted's History of Kent is a passage which countenances the idea of an ancient road having traversed the country in this line.

The exact route from London to Winchester not being defined, we may suppose that it ran as before, through Silchester, and from thence by St. Mary Bourne, as in the 15th Iter. From Winchester, as the road still exists leading to Old Sarum, the distance of eleven miles will probably give the site of *Brige*, although the station itself is not known; and the nine following will lead us to Old Sarum. Pursuing the course of the road, which may be still traced quite to Dorchester, remains found on Gussage Cow Down point out the site of *Ventageladia*; and the disagreement between the Itinerary and real distance from thence to Dorchester justifies us in supposing that some intermediate post has been omitted. The site of *Moridunum* is doubtful; some thinking it to be Eggar-don, or the Hill of the Morini, with which the distance of nine miles would not disagree; while others, with more reason, prefer Seaton, the great port of the West, because the Foss leads from Ilchester directly to it. Intermediate stations have evidently been lost between this place and Exeter, as has also been the case between that place and the Dart, the Tamar, the Fowey, and the Fal. From Honiton the road is visible pointing to Exeter, as well as from Exeter to Totness, and according to the ingenious Borlase, even to Lostwithiel.

ITER XVII.		SITES OF THE STATIONS.	
Ab Anderida [Eboracum] usque, sic :—		From East Bourne to York.	
	<i>Corrected numbers.</i>		
(162) Sylva Anderida			East Bourne.
m. p. . .			
(152) Novio mago	XXXX		Holwood Hill.
(5) Londinio XV	XV		London.
(163) Ad Fines *	XXVIII		Brougham.
(36) Durolisponde †	XXX		Godmanchester.
(37) Durnomago XXX	XX		Castor, on the left bank of the Nen.
(38) Corisennis XXX	XXV		Ancaster.
(39) Lindo XXX	XXI		Lincoln.
(164) In Medio XV	XV		
(165) Ab Abum XV	XV		Winterton.
Unde transis in Max- imam.			
(166) Ad Petuariam VI	VI		Brough.
(43) Deinde Eboraco, ut supra (It. 5)			
m. p. XLVI	XXX		York.

\* *Stuk.* XXX.

† It. 3. Duraliponte—Durnomago XX.—Isinnis XX.—Lindo XX.



This Iter ran in the track of the British Ermyn Street, from Pevensey and East Bourne, which were perhaps the *Anderida Portus*, and *Anderida* of the 15th Iter, along the ridge of hills to Holwood Hill (already mentioned as the capital of the Rhemi), and from thence to London, but its traces are now so obscure as to be almost forgotten. Some think that from London it proceeded along the British Street, by the Green Lanes, Cheshunt, and to the west of Broxbourn to Ware; while others suppose that this Roman road went much straighter, and nearly in the course of the present turnpike through Ware to Broughing, a post at the confluence of the Rib and the Quin, where was probably the station *Ad Fines*, the boundary between the countries of the Iceni, the Cassii, and the Trinobantes. From hence the Roman road is so perfect by Caxton quite to Lincoln, that we fix the station of *Durnomagus* at the great camp near Castor, and the three others at Godmanchester, Ancaster, and Lincoln. From Lincoln the Roman road proceeds directly to the banks of the Humber, having, at the distance assigned in the Iter, the *Mansio in Medio*, and the post at Winterton; from whence six miles carry us across the river to Brough, or *Petuarium*, a post often confounded with the *Prætorium* of the 6th Iter. As there is a Roman road still existing from Brough towards Weighton and then over Barmby Moor to York, there can be little doubt in considering it as the course of this Iter. Should, however, the forty-six miles given in the Itinerary (which appears to have been an error arising from the mistake of the transcriber in confounding *Petuarium* and *Prætorium*) be considered as correct, the course of the Iter may be supposed to have run from Brough by Londesborough and Millington, to the great road from Flamborough, and then to have turned with it to York, making exactly the forty-six miles of the Itinerary.

---

ITER XVIII.			SITES OF THE STATIONS.
(43) Ab Eboraco per medium insulæ Clausentum usque, sic :—			From York through the middle of the island to Bittern.
		<i>Corrected numbers.</i>	
(42) Legiolio m. p. XXI		XXI	Castleford.
(167) Ad Fines XVIII		XXIII	Temple Brough, on the bank of the Don.
(168) . . . . . XVI		XVI	Tapton Hill, near Chesterfield.
(169) . . . . . XVI		XII	Camp near Penkridge.
(170) Derventione * XVI		XII	Little Chester.
(171) Ad Trivonam XII		XII	Berry Farm, in Branston.
(15) Etoceto † XII		XII	Wall.
(14) Manduesuedo XVI		XVI	Manceter.
(13) Benonnis XII		XII	High Cross.
(12) Tripontio XI		XI	Near Dove Bridge.
(11) Isannavaria XII		X	Burnt Walls.
(172) Brinavis XII		XII	Black Ground, near Chipping Norton.
(173) Ælia Castra XVI		XVI	Alcester, near Bicester.
(174) Dorocina XV		XVI	Dorchester.
(175) Tamesi VI		VI	On the Thames.
Vindomi } XV		XX	Silchester.
(122) Calleva }			
(141) Clausento XXXXVI		XXXXV	Bittern, near Southampton.

This Iter proceeds from York in the same direction as the fourth to Castleford, where, bearing to the right to join the Ryk-nield Street, it continues with it through the several stations of Temple Brough on the Don, Chesterfield, Penkridge, Little Chester, and Branston, to Wall. Here diverging to the left with the Watling Street, it passed through Manceter, High Cross, and Dove Bridge, to Burnt Walls. It there quitted the known road, and bore across the country, by an unknown route, to Alcester, on the Akeman Street; but the considerable remains found at Black Ground, near Chipping Norton, would lead us to place the station of *Brinavis* there, if the Roman road did not make any material deviation between Burnt Walls and Alcester.

From Alcester the road runs plainly over Ottmoor, and indeed almost all the way to Dorchester. But from thence as we can discover no traces of a road, and as our next post appears to have been only six miles distant and on the Thames, if any reliance can be placed on the number, it may be the point where the Roman

\* XVI.

† It. 2, inv. Etoceto.—Manduesuedo XIII.—Benonnis XII.—Tripontio Isanta Varia XII.



road from Wantage apparently passes that river opposite Mongewell. The next distance of fifteen miles, being insufficient to lead us by any road to *Vindomis*, if it were placed either at Silchester or near St. Mary Bourne, it is more than probable that there is some error in the name of the station; and as the following number of forty-six miles agrees with the distance in the 15th Iter of the road from Silchester passing near Egbury to Bittern, we cannot help supposing that the name of *Vindomis* has been inserted by mistake for that of *Calleva*.

## INDEX TO THE MAP.

### A.

Abona, river, *C h* and *K f*.  
 Abravanus, bay, *E e*.  
 Abus, river, *G g*.  
 Æsica, river, *E g*.  
 Alauna, city, *E g*, *I f*.  
 ———, river, *F g*, *G f*, *K f*.  
 Alps, Pennine, *G g*.  
 Altars, marking the bounds of the  
     Roman empire, *C h*.  
 Anderida, wood, *K g*.  
 ———, town, *L g*.  
 Antivestæum, promontory, *L c*.  
 Antona, river, *I f g*.  
 Argitta, river, *F b*.  
 Ariconum Sariconium, *I f*.  
 Armorica, cities of, *M g*.  
 Artavia, *K d*.  
 Attacotti, *D f*.  
 Attrebates, *K g*.  
 Aufona, river, *I g*.  
 Ausoba, bay, *I a*.  
 Austrinum, *P N a*.  
 Auterii, *I b*.  
 Auterum, town, *I b*.

### B.

Banatia, town, *D g*.  
 Banchorium, stat. and monastery,  
     *H f*.  
 Banna, river, *F d*.  
 Belessama, river, *G f*.  
 Belgæ, *L f*, *K f g*.  
 Benisamnum, promontory, *K a*.  
 Benonæ, *I g*.  
 Bibrax, *K g*.  
 Bibroci, *K g*.  
 Bodotria, æstuary, *E g*.  
 Boduni, *I f*.  
 Bolerium, prom., *L c*.  
 Boreum, prom., *F b*.  
 Branogenium, town, *I f*.  
 Bremenium, stipendiary, *F g*.  
 Brigantes, *G g*, *G f g*, *I c*.  
 Brigantia, city, *I c*.  
 Brigantum Extrema, promontory,  
     *G h*.  
 Brigus, river, *I c*.  
 Bubinda, }  
 Buvinda, } river, *G d*.

### C.

Cæsarea, island, *M f*.  
 Caleba, city, *K g*.  
 Caledonia, *B h*, *C f*.  
 Caledonian wood, *C g*.  
 Caledoniæ Extrema, *A h*.  
 Caledonii, *C g*.  
 Camalodunum, colony, *I h*.  
 ———, called Geminæ  
     Martia, *I h*.  
 Cambodunum, town under the  
     Latian law, *G g*.  
 Camboricum, colony, *I h*.  
 Canganæ, islands, *K a*.  
 Cangani, *K a*.  
 Canganum, prom., *H e*.  
 Canganus, bay, *H e*.  
 Cantæ, *C h*, *K h*.  
 Cantiiopolis, stipendiary, *K h*.  
 Cantium, promontory, *K h*.  
 Carbantum, *F e*.  
 Carnabii, *B h*, *H f*, *M d*.  
 Carnonacæ, *B g*.  
 Cassii, *I f g*.  
 Catarracton, Caturacton, town un-  
     der the Latian law, *G g*.  
 Catini, *B h*.  
 Caucii, *H c*.  
 Cauna, island, *K h*.  
 Celnus, river, *D h*.  
 Cenia, city, *M d*.  
 Ceniis, river, *M d*.  
 Cenomanni, *I h*.  
 Cerones, *C f*.  
 Cimbri, region of, *K e*.  
 Clausentum, *L g*.  
 Clita, river, *H f*.  
 Clota, river, *E f*.  
 ———, island, *D e*.  
 Coccium, city, *G f*.  
 Coitani, }  
 Coitanni, } *H g*.  
 Colanica, *E f*.  
 Conovius, river, *H f*.  
 Coria, town, *E f*.  
 Corinum, town under the Latian  
     law, *K f*.  
 Coriondii, *H c*.  
 Creones, *C g*.  
 Curia, town, *F f*.



## D.

- Dabrona, river, *K b*.  
 Damnii, *D f, E e, F d*.  
 Damnonii, state of, *L e*.  
 Darabona, } river, *F c*.  
 Darabouna, }  
 Derbentio, town, *H g*.  
 ———, river, *F f*.  
 Deva, colony, called Getica, *H f*.  
 ———, river, *D g, E e f, G d, H f*.  
 Dimeciæ, *I e*.  
 Diva, river, *I e*.  
 Divana, city, *D h*.  
 Dubana, river, *L b*.  
 Dubræ, city, } *K h*.  
 ———, port, }  
 Dubrona, river, *K b*.  
 Dunina, islands, *A i*.  
 Dunum, city, *F d, H c*.  
 Durius, river, *L e a*.  
 Durnomagus, town under the La-  
 tian law, *I g*.  
 Durobris, Durobrobis, Duroprovæ,  
 Durobrivæ, stipendiary town,  
*K h*.

## E.

- Eblana, town, *H c*.  
 Eblanæ, } *H c*.  
 Eblani, }  
 Eboracum, } municipal and me-  
 Eburacum, } tropolis, *G g*.  
 Ebudes, isles, *B f g*.  
 Ebuda prima, island, *A g*.  
 ——— secunda, *A f*.  
 ——— major, *B g*.  
 ——— quarta, *B f*.  
 ——— quinta, *B f*.  
 Ebudium, } prom., *B g*.  
 Ebudum, }  
 Edria, isle, *H d*.  
 Epiacum, town, *F g*.  
 Epidiæ, isles, *C e*.  
 Epidia inferior, *D d*.  
 ——— superior, *C e*.  
 Epidii, *C e*.  
 Epidium, prom., *D e*.  
 Eriri, mount, *H e*.  
 Etocetum, town, *I f*.  
 Extremitas Caledoniæ, *B i*.

## F.

- Flavia Extrema, *I h*.  
 ———, province, *H f, I g*.  
 Forum Dianæ, town, *I g*.  
 Fretum Britannicum, *K i, L h*.

## G.

- Gadeni, *E g*.  
 Galacum, } town, *F g*.  
 Galgacum, }  
 Gallia, *L M N f g h i*.  
 ——— Belgica, *L i*.  
 ——— Celtica, *M h*.  
 Garion, } river, *I h*.  
 Garionis, }  
 Gessoriacum, town, *L h*.  
 Glebon, Glevum colony, called  
 Claudia, *K f*.  
 Gobaneum, } town, *I f*.  
 Gobannium, }  
 Gobœum, promontory, *N e*.  
 Grampius, mount., *D h*.

## H.

- Halangium, } town, *L c*.  
 Holongum, }  
 Hardinii, *G b*.  
 Hedui, region of, *K f*.  
 Helenis, } prom., *M e*.  
 Helenum, }  
 Herculea, isle, *K d*.  
 Horestii, *E g*.  
 Hybernia, *F—N a b c d*.

## I.

- Iberna, river, *M a*.  
 Ibernii, *M a*.  
 Icenii, *H g*.  
 Idmana, river, *I h*.  
 Jena, river, *E e*.  
 Ila, river, *B h*.  
 Isamnium, promontory, *G d*.  
 Isca, colony, metropolis, named  
 Secunda, *K f*.  
 Isca, *L e*.  
 ———, river, *I e, L e*.  
 ———, stipendiary town, *L e*.  
 Isurium, city, *G g*.  
 Ituna, æstuary, *F f*.  
 ———, river, *D h, F f*.  
 Itys, river, *C g*.

## K.

- Κριοῦ μέτωπον, promontory, *M d*.

## L.

- Laberus, town, *G d*.  
 Lelanonius, bay, *D f*.  
 Lemana, river, *L h*.  
 Lemanus, town, *K h*.  
 Libnius, river, *I a*.  
 Limnia, isle, *H d*.  
 Lindum, colony, *H g*.  
 Lindum, *E g*.

Loebius, river, *H c.*  
 Logi, *C h.*  
 Logia, river, *F d.*  
 Londinum Augusta, colony and metropolis, Londona, Londinium, *K g.*  
 Longus, river, *C f.*  
 Loxa, river, *C h.*  
 Lucani, *M a.*  
 Lucopibia or Casæ Candidæ, *E e.*  
 Luentium, town, *I e.*  
 Lugubalia, Luguballium, Lugubalia, Luguvalium, town under the Latian law, *F f.*  
 Lyncalidor, lake of, *D f.*

## M.

Macobicum, } *K a.*  
 Macolicum, }  
 Maenoeda, isle, *G e.*  
 Magna, *I f.*  
 Magnus Portus, *L g.*  
 — Sinus, *H a.*  
 Maleos, isle, *C e.*  
 Mare Germanicum, *E I i.*  
 — Internum, *F G H f e d.*  
 — Orcadum, *A h.*  
 — Vergivum, *K L c d.*  
 — Thule, *A i.*  
 Maxima, province, *G f g.*  
 Mediolanum, stat.  
 —, *I f.*  
 Menapia, city, *I d, K d.*  
 Menapii, *I c.*  
 Meneviacum Fretum, *H e.*  
 Mertæ, *B h.*  
 Metaris, æstuary, *H h.*  
 Modona, river, *I d.*  
 Mona, isle, *H e.*  
 Monapia, island, *I d.*  
 Moricamb, river, *G f.*  
 Morini, *K i, L f.*  
 Muridunum, stipendiary town, *I e.*  
 Musidunum, town, *L d.*

## N.

Nabæus, river, *B h.*  
 Nagnata, town, *H b.*  
 Nidus, river, *E f, K e.*  
 Novantæ, *E e.*  
 Novantum Chersonesus, *E d.*  
 Noviomagus, town, *K g.*

## O.

Oboca, river, *I c.*  
 Oceanus Atlanticus or Britannicus, *A—N a.*  
 — Deucalidonium, *A—D e.*

Oceanus Internus, *F G f e.*  
 — Vergivus, *I K c d.*  
 Ocetus, isle, *B i.*  
 Ocrinum, mount, *L e.*  
 —, prom., *M c.*  
 Octorupium, prom., *I d.*  
 Olicana, Alicana, town, *G g.*  
 Orcades, isles, *B h.*  
 Orcadum, promontory, *B h.*  
 Ordovices, *H e, I f.*  
 Orrea, town, *E g.*  
 Ottadini, *E, F g.*  
 Oxellum, M., *C g.*  
 —, promon., *H h.*

## P.

Parisii, *G g.*  
 Penoxullum, promontory, *C h.*  
 Petuaria, *G g.*  
 Philippus, *N.*  
 Prima, province, *K g, L d e f.*  
 Portus Felix, *G g.*  
 — Magnus, *L g.*  
 — Rhutupis, *K h.*  
 — Sistantiorum, *G f.*  
 Ptoroton, metr. under the Latian law, *C h.*

## R.

Racina, isle, *D d.*  
 Ragæ, stipendiary town, *H g.*  
 Regia, *G b, L a.*  
 Regnum, Regentium, *L g.*  
 Regulbium, *K h.*  
 Rerigonium, *E e, G f.*  
 Rerigonus, Sinus, *E e.*  
 Rheba, metr., *H b.*  
 Rhebeus, river, *H b.*  
 —, lake, *G b.*  
 Rhobogdii, *F d c b.*  
 Rhobogdium, town and promon., *F c.*  
 Rhufina, *M b.*  
 Rhutupis, colony and metr., *K h.*

## S.

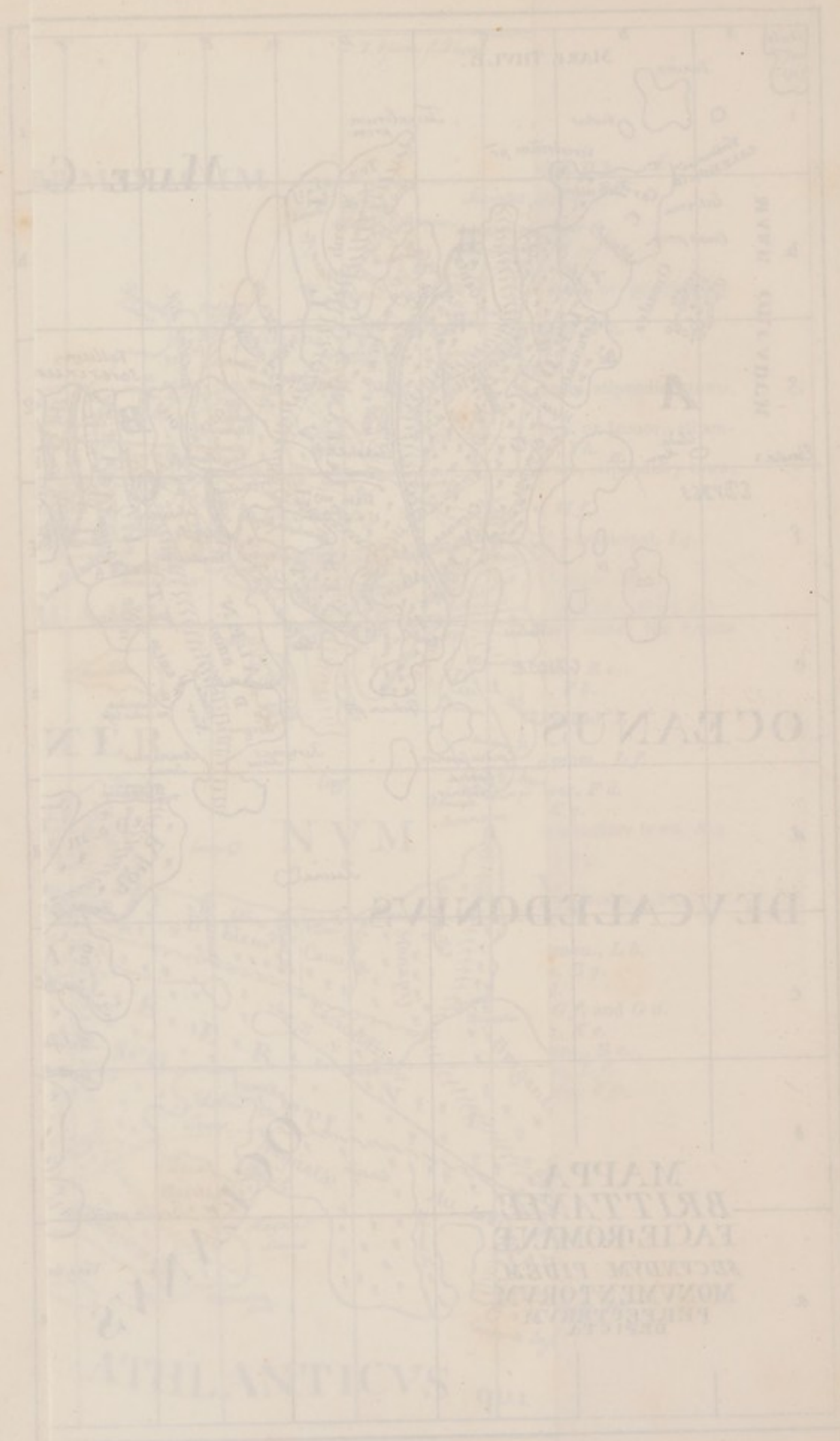
Sabrina, æstuary, river, *K f.*  
 Sacrum, promontory, *I d.*  
 Salinæ, *H f.*  
 Sarna, isle, *M f.*  
 Scotti, *G c, H b.*  
 Secunda, province, *H f, I e.*  
 Segontiaci, *K g.*  
 Segontium, } stip. town, *H e*  
 Seguntium, }  
 Selgovæ, *F f.*  
 Sena, river, *L a.*  
 —, fount, *H c.*



- Senæ, isle, *N e.*  
 ——— Desertæ, isles, *L a.*  
 Seteja, river, *H f.*  
 Silures, *I f e.*  
 Sistentii, *F G f.*  
 Sistentiorum Portus, *G f.*  
 Sorbiodunum, town under the Latian law, *K f.*  
 Stuccia, river, *I e.*  
 Straba, river, *B h.*  
 Surius, river, *I h, K h.*
- T.
- Taixali, *D h.*  
 Taixalorum, promontory, *C i.*  
 Tamara, river, *M d.*  
 ———, town, *M d.*  
 Tamea, *D g.*  
 Tavus, river, *D g.*  
 Termolum, *K e.*  
 Texalii, *D h.*  
 Thamesis, river, *K g.*  
 Thanatos, isle, *K h.*  
 Theodosia, town under the Latian law, *E f.*  
 Thermæ, colony, named Aquæ Solis, *K f.*  
 Thule, isle, *A i.*  
 Tibias, river, *K e.*  
 Tina, river, *E h, F g.*  
 Tisa, river, *G g.*  
 Tobius, river, *I e.*  
 Trimontium, *F f.*  
 Trinobantes, *I h.*  
 Trisanton, river, *L g.*  
 Tueda, river, *E f.*  
 Tuerbius, river, *I e.*  
 Tuessis, river, *D h.*  
 ———, town, *D h.*
- V.
- Vacomagis, *D g.*  
 Vaga, river, *I f.*  
 Valentia, province, *E F f g.*  
 ——— of Antoninus, *E f.*  
 ——— Severus, *F g.*  
 Vanduaris, *E f.*
- Varar, æstuary, *D h.*  
 Vecta, } isle, *L g.*  
 Vectis, }  
 Vecturones, *E g.*  
 Vedra, river, *F g.*  
 Velaborii, *L a.*  
 Venicinium, head or promontory, *H a.*  
 Venisnia, island, *F a.*  
 Vennicnii, *G a.*  
 Venricones, *E g.*  
 Venta, Belgarum, stipendiary town, *K g.*  
 ——— Cenom. or Icenor., stipendiary town, *I h.*  
 ——— Silurum, stipendiary town, *K f.*  
 Vericonium, *H f.*  
 Verolanium, } municipal, *I g.*  
 Verulamium, }  
 Verubium, } prom., *B h.*  
 Verubrium, }  
 Vespasiana, province, *D f g h.*  
 Victoria, town under the Latian law, *E g.*  
 Vidogara, river, *E e.*  
 Vidua, river, *F b.*  
 Vindelia, } island, *L f.*  
 Vindilios, }  
 Vindelisi, } prom., *L f.*  
 Vindelias, }  
 Vinderus, river, *F d.*  
 Vindonum, *K g.*  
 ———, stipendiary town, *K g.*  
 Vinovium, } *F g.*  
 Vindovium, }  
 Vinvedrum, } promon., *A i.*  
 Virvedrum, }  
 Vodis, *L b.*  
 Vodium, promon., *L b.*  
 Volsas Sinus, *B g.*  
 Voluba, *M d.*  
 Voluntii, *F G f, and G d.*  
 Uxella, river, *K e.*  
 ———, mount., *E e.*  
 ———, town, *L f.*  
 Uxellum, town, *F f.*







BY THE REV. DR. GILES.

I. Classical.

1. A Greek-English and English-Greek Lexicon, to which is prefixed a Greek Grammar, for the use of Colleges and Schools, 2nd Edit. 8vo. Longman and Co. 1*l.* 1*s.* cloth bds. 1841
2. A Grammar of the Latin Language, 2nd Edit. 8vo. J. Bohn and W. Pickering, 6*s.* bds. . . . . 1836
3. Avieni, Rufi Festi, Opera, ex editionibus variis in unum collecta, 8vo. bds. J. Bohn . . . . . 1839
4. Germanici Cæsaris, Inclyti ducis, poetæ elegantis Carmina, quæ extant, 8vo. bds. J. Bohn . . . . . 1839
5. Antimachi Colophonii Reliquiæ, 8vo. bds. J. Bohn . 1838
6. Valerii Catonis Carmina, 8vo. bds. J. Bohn . . 1839
7. Severi Sancti Carmen de mortibus boum, 8vo. bds. J. Bohn  
1839
8. Maximiani Elegiæ Sex, 8vo. bds. J. Bohn . . . 1839  
(Of these minor Classical Authors only 100 copies have been printed.)
9. Ennii Poetæ fragmenta quæ extant, ed. sec. 8vo., prostant apud Librarios, (only 70 copies) . . . . . 1841
10. Terentii Comœdiæ Sex, cum notis et scholiis omnibus, 8vo.  
1838

II. Historical.

1. Venerable Bede's Ecclesiastical History of Britain, translated and revised from the translation of Stevens, with illustrations and facsimiles of MSS., 8vo. half morocco. J. Bohn  
1840
2. The Minor Historical Works of Venerable Bede will shortly appear in the same form.
3. The Works of Gildas and Nennius, translated from the original, and with the former translations diligently compared, with facsimiles, 8vo. half morocco. J. Bohn . . 1841
4. Richard of Devizes, and Richard of Cirencester, translated from the Latin, to which is added the Latin Text of Richard of Cirencester, 8vo. half morocco. J. Bohn . . . 1841



CHAPTER I

Samuel Johnson was born on the 9th of September 1709, at Lichfield, in the County of Stafford. His father, Michael Johnson, was a merchant, and his mother, Anne Johnson, was the daughter of a farmer. He was educated at Lichfield School, and then at St. John's College, Oxford. He was called to the bar in 1734, and practised for some years. He was elected a Fellow of the Royal Society in 1759, and a Member of the Academy of the Sciences in 1761. He was also a Member of the Society of Antiquaries, and of the Society of Dilettanti. He was a man of great talents, and of a most amiable character. He was a man of great industry, and of great perseverance. He was a man of great courage, and of great fortitude. He was a man of great wisdom, and of great judgment. He was a man of great goodness, and of great kindness. He was a man of great piety, and of great devotion. He was a man of great love, and of great affection. He was a man of great respect, and of great esteem. He was a man of great honor, and of great glory. He was a man of great fame, and of great renown. He was a man of great power, and of great influence. He was a man of great wealth, and of great riches. He was a man of great nobility, and of great grandeur. He was a man of great majesty, and of great splendor. He was a man of great glory, and of great honor. He was a man of great fame, and of great renown. He was a man of great power, and of great influence. He was a man of great wealth, and of great riches. He was a man of great nobility, and of great grandeur. He was a man of great majesty, and of great splendor.

CHAPTER II

Johnson's early life was spent in the study of the law. He was a man of great industry, and of great perseverance. He was a man of great courage, and of great fortitude. He was a man of great wisdom, and of great judgment. He was a man of great goodness, and of great kindness. He was a man of great piety, and of great devotion. He was a man of great love, and of great affection. He was a man of great respect, and of great esteem. He was a man of great honor, and of great glory. He was a man of great fame, and of great renown. He was a man of great power, and of great influence. He was a man of great wealth, and of great riches. He was a man of great nobility, and of great grandeur. He was a man of great majesty, and of great splendor. He was a man of great glory, and of great honor. He was a man of great fame, and of great renown. He was a man of great power, and of great influence. He was a man of great wealth, and of great riches. He was a man of great nobility, and of great grandeur. He was a man of great majesty, and of great splendor.





